PUBLISHED BY THE MICHELSON 20MM FOUNDATION,
AND MADE POSSIBLE BY THE GENEROUS SUPPORT OF
GARY AND ALYA MICHELSON

THE INTANGIBLE ADVANTAGE

UNDERSTANDING INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY IN THE NEW ECONOMY

BY DAVID KLINE
EXECUTIVE EDITOR DAVID KAPPOS
WITH GARY K. MICHELSON, ROBERT G. KRUPKA,
RANDALL E. KAHNKE, AND KERRY L. BUNDY

The Intangible Advantage

Understanding Intellectual Property In the New Economy

Brought to you by The Michelson 20MM Foundation, made possible by the generous support of Gary and Alya Michelson

Executive Editor:
David Kappos
Former U.S. Undersecretary of Commerce
Director of the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office 2009-2014

By David Kline
Gary K. Michelson, M.D., Robert G. Krupka[†], Randall E. Kahnke[*], and Kerry L. Bundy[*]

David Kline is a Pulitzer-Prize-nominated journalist and author who has written for the *New York Times, Wall Street Journal, Forbes, The Atlantic, Harvard Business Review,* and other national media. His bestselling book *"Rembrandts in the Attic"* from Harvard Business Press is considered the seminal work on patent strategy within corporate America and has shaped the direction of executive thinking on intellectual property issues ever since its publication in 2000. Named one of the "World's Top 300 Intellectual Property Strategists" by *IAM Magazine*, Kline also coauthored *"Great Again: Revitalizing America's Entrepreneurial Leadership"* (Harvard Business Press, 2011) and three other books.

The Michelson 20MM Foundation, Inc.
11755 Wilshire Blvd, Suite 1400
Los Angeles, CA 90025

© 2016 The Michelson 20MM Foundation. *The Intangible Advantage: Understanding Intellectual Property in the New Economy* by The Michelson 20MM Foundation is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-NoDerivatives 4.0 International License. Under this license, any user of this textbook or the textbook contents herein must provide proper attribution and indicate if changes were made. Under this license, users may not use the material for commercial purposes or distribute any derivatives of the material. Users are free to copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format.

To view a copy of this license, visit http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-nd/4.0/.

For questions regarding this licensing, please contact info@20mm.org.

To learn more about The Michelson 20MM Foundation, download the book for free, or purchase individual print copies, visit www.michelson20mm.org.

Trademarks
The Michelson 20MM Foundation name, logo, and book covers are not subject to the license and may not be reproduced without the prior and express written consent of The Michelson 20MM Foundation.

ISBN-13 978-0-9975426-0-8 Interactive eBook

Acknowledgements

The Michelson 20MM Foundation gratefully acknowledges the careful advice and counsel offered by Paul Michel, Chief Judge (ret) of the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit; Louis Foreman, inventor, entrepreneur and Intellectual Property Owners Education Foundation President; Luke L. Dauchot, P.C.; Professor Richard Epstein of New York University and the University of Chicago; and Professor Paul Janicke at the University of Houston Law Center. Michelson 20MM also gratefully acknowledges Alya Michelson for her generous support.

Preface: The Intangible Advantage

by Gary K. Michelson

I did not start out to be an inventor.

I wanted to be a doctor. That's all I ever wanted to be, ever since the day I sat at my grandmother's kitchen table — I must have been seven years old — and smelled her flesh burning on the stove. You see, my grandmother suffered from syringomyelia, a crippling spinal disease that results in terrible back pain and the loss of sensation to pain and temperature in the extremities, especially the hands. When I saw the flames licking up through her fingers that day, I screamed, and she quickly doused her hand in the sink.

"Don't worry," she told me. "One day you'll become a doctor and you'll fix me."

Some 20 years later, I had graduated medical school and completed a residency in orthopedic surgery, and was doing a fellowship in spinal surgery at St. Luke's Medical Center in Houston when I stumbled upon a problem in an otherwise routine case. The case was a discectomy — the removal of a ruptured disk that is pressing on a nerve root. I noticed that because the disc had ruptured slowly over time, it had created a bone spur, which was like a little rhinoceros horn of bone, as hard as ivory. So I asked myself, How is taking out that disc going to help the patient if the bone spur is going to cause him pain for the rest of his life?

I wanted to take that bone spur out, but I knew of no way to do that because it was sticking straight up about five inches down inside a narrow little hole in the patient's back. So I asked a very famous surgeon in the hospital, "How do you get that bone spur out?"

"Do not put a high speed burr in there and attempt to grind it down," he said. He had tried that once, and ended up damaging the patient's spinal cord and paralyzing her for life. That sounded to me like a pretty strong argument against trying that approach again.

Then I asked the head of my fellowship program, "How do I get that bone spur out?" He explained

that he once tried using a grabber instrument called a ronguer to try to break off the bone spur. But the pressure exerted on the instrument caused it to explode, sending fragments all throughout the dural sac. Luckily, he was able to retrieve the pieces and repair the damage. But once again, here was an approach that didn't exactly recommend itself.

No matter which spine expert I asked, the response was always the same. They all told me what *not* to do. Leave the bone spur alone, they said — just sew up the patient and send him home, even if it means dooming him to a lifetime of pain. Be content to follow the age-old motto of the physician, "First, do no harm."

Be content? George Bernard Shaw once said that inventors are a disgruntled lot. And I must have been pretty disgruntled with the lack of any solution for that bone spur, because I decided to invent a solution myself.

Instead of trying to grind down the spur (with potentially disastrous results) or break it off (again, with potentially disastrous results), I came up with a counterintuitive approach. You see, I realized that while a bone spur itself is the hardest bone known to man, it sits atop the vertebrae, the inside of which is much softer and more mesh-like. What if I tried tapping the spur *into* the softer vertebrae?

I found a tool normally used for an entirely different purpose and thought it might suffice for the job. And the next time I had a discectomy case with a bone spur, I tried out my new tool.

I tapped the bone spur lightly with it, but nothing happened. I tapped it again, harder, but still nothing happened. Then I tapped it really hard, and that's when I heard a "pop" and felt the instrument suddenly sink down. Now, I knew I couldn't have damaged any nerves or structures because I had retractors holding the nerve and the dural sac out of the way. But when I looked inside, I could not see the bone spur anywhere. It was gone. And I thought, "Uh-oh."

So I brought in an x-ray machine and looked for the bone spur. It turned out the spur had corked the very hole that I had created when I broke it off and pushed it into the vertebrae — like a cork in a bottle. There wasn't a drop of blood anywhere,

and no damage to any tissue. In other words, my procedure was self-sealing! To this day, it remains the best solution for this problem.

Over the next few months, I designed a set of instruments better suited to removing bone spurs no matter where they were located in the spinal canal. I gave the drawings to a machinist, and he created the tools according to my design. Soon I was using them routinely on bone spur cases, and getting such good results that other surgeons started sending me their bone spur cases.

But eventually, these surgeons began asking me to provide them with a set of tools of their own. I said sure, and for each request, I would ask my machinist to fabricate another set of tools. Finally, the machinist told me that it would be cheaper just to make a hundred sets at once, since the major cost of fabricating the tools was in setting up the jigs on the machine.

I thought that made perfect sense. After all, the demand for the tools from other surgeons was growing. In addition, I was disgruntled enough with the standard of care in other areas of spinal treatment that I had already invented several other new spinal surgery tools. So I started a little company to sell my tools and devices.

I quickly realized, of course, that I needed to patent my inventions to protect all the time, money, and effort that I had invested to develop them. After all, if you don't patent your inventions, especially in a competitive industry like medical devices, others will simply copy those inventions with impunity and sell them at a lower cost because they didn't have to invest anything to develop them in the first place. That's a great way to drive the innovators out of any industry and halt any further technical advances in that field.

Over the next 15 years or so, I continued to invent various new spinal surgery tools and techniques, eventually obtaining more than 950 patents worldwide for innovations that fundamentally changed the practice of spinal surgery. These innovations are today employed in the vast majority of spinal surgeries worldwide.

In fact, they became so widely adopted and so central to modern spinal treatment that in 2005

the giant medical device company Medtronic purchased the majority of my patent portfolio of spinal surgery inventions for $1.35 billion. Having retired from medical practice, I now devote my energy and philanthropy to inventing new solutions to problems beyond orthopedics.

The Michelson Medical Research Foundation, launched with a $100 million grant, is dedicated to funding cutting-edge medical research that would be considered to avant-garde to receive funding from the National Institutes of Health or other conventional funding sources. In just one area of medical research, we committed to funding the prestigious Sabin Vaccine Institute with an initial $5 million five-year grant to develop effective vaccines against the parasitic worms that infect 1.4 billion of the world's poorest people with devastating effect.

My Found Animals Foundation promotes pet adoption and offers $50 million in research grants as well as a $25 million prize to any scientists who discover a way to chemically spay and neuter animals via a single, low-cost injection. Found Animals Foundation may be the largest privately-funded animal welfare foundation in the world, with a annual budget of $15 million, 65 full-time employees, and hundreds of dedicated volunteers.

My wife Alya and I also donated $50 million to the University of Southern California for a convergent bioscience center to pursue medical breakthroughs in cancer and other diseases.

The Michelson 20MM Foundation works to make higher education more accessible, affordable, and effective, in part by making textbooks and new forms of interactive educational content available for free online to college students.

Which brings me to the important book you are now reading. *The Intangible Advantage: Understanding Intellectual Property in the New Economy* is the first-ever text on intellectual property (IP) aimed at ordinary citizens, especially college students. As such, it is an important innovation in and of itself — one that hopefully will solve a big problem in American education.

Until now, intellectual property has been taught only in law schools or the occasional business school seminar. In today's knowledge economy, however, this is no longer sufficient. That's because over the last 40 years, intellectual property has grown from an arcane, narrowly-specialized legal field into a major force in American social and economic life. It comprises an astonishing 45 percent of total U.S. GDP today, and represents 80 percent of the market value of all publicly-traded companies in the U.S.

Put simply, intellectual property is now the chief engine of wealth creation and economic growth in the world. And as such, it has become a subject of vital importance for *all* Americans, not just those in the legal profession.

Remember that scene in the 1967 movie *"The Graduate"* when Mr. McGuire (Walter Brooke) offers career advice to a young Benjamin Braddock (Dustin Hoffman)?

"Plastics!" he says. "There's a great future in plastics. Will you think about it?"

Half a century later, intellectual property has become the new watchword for almost any career of the future. Look around and you'll see IP's imprint everywhere. The business pages are filled with headlines of corporate "patent wars." Art journals debate whether the artist Richard Prince's appropriation of other people's work is infringement or fair use. Music critics discuss the implications of the $7 million copyright infringement verdict against Robin Thicke and Pharrell Williams for allegedly borrowing certain musical themes from the work of soul singer Marvin Gaye. Indeed, from Silicon Valley startups to Fortune 500 board rooms, from MIT engineering labs to Wall Street trading desks, and from college business seminars to debates in Congress over global trade policy, intellectual property issues now lie at the heart of almost every arena of modern life today.

And as a result, any young person today who does not understand at least the basics of intellectual property — and its value and role in science, business, arts, and the professions — will find him or herself at a distinct disadvantage in the world of tomorrow.

This book comes in several forms, suitable for different uses. The *traditional* ebook version of *The Intangible Advantage* contains the full text — including the hidden history of the U.S. patent system, the world's first democratized patent system — as well as links to the first-ever series of popular animated videos on the basics of intellectual property. These videos answer such common questions as "Can I Patent That?" and "What If Someone Infringes Your Trademark?

The *enhanced* ebook version of *The Intangible Advantage* contains the full text and links to the videos plus illustrative photographs and other rich media. It also contains comprehensive learning assessment tools such as targeted Q&As for each section of every chapter. We believe the enhanced version of the ebook will be most useful to college students in particular.

Finally, *The Intangible Advantage* also comes as an online course for directed learners — whether college students in an intellectual property fundamentals course, users of the United States Patent and Trademark Office and the U.S. Copyright Office, or young executive trainees working in corporate law and engineering departments in firms both large and small.

Such a ground-breaking body of work would not have been possible without the extraordinary contributions of some of the leading lights in the intellectual property world over the past four years.

Principal author David Kline did a masterful job of translating the hidden history, complex legal doctrines, and practical workings of the U.S. intellectual property system into popular and engaging prose. It probably helped that he is *not* a lawyer by background, but rather a former war correspondent-turned-business journalist who wrote *"Rembrandts in the Attic,"* the seminal work on patent strategy in corporate America published by Harvard Business Press.

Contributing author Robert G. Krupka is one of the foremost patent litigators in the nation. Anyone who wants to understand the complex (and controversial) American system of patent litigation can do no better than read his chapter on "Patent Enforcement."

Contributing authors Randall E. Kahnke's and Kerry L. Bundy's expert rendition of the role and importance of trade secret law in the American economy will be much appreciated by students as well as business leaders in every industry. This is especially the case now that the first national trade secret law appears to be finally moving towards congressional passage.

To be sure, a book that explains the complex workings of patent, copyright, trademark, and trade secret law in popular, non-legalese prose — especially one largely written by a non-lawyer (albeit a recognized expert in the field) — needs careful vetting. And for our "peer-reviews" we relied on the advice and counsel of a number of leading IP academics and practitioners, five of whom stand out most strongly for their contributions.

Chief Judge (ret.) Paul R. Michel of the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit, the nation's main court for patent appeals, made enormous contributions in reviewing the manuscript not only for its legal theories but for its explanations of practical aspects of the patent system as well. His carefully-reasoned insider's explanation of how the patent system *really* works made all of us who worked on this project feel privileged to sit at the feet of such a patient master.

Professor Richard Epstein is the Laurence A. Tisch Professor of Law at New York University, a senior fellow at the Hoover Institution, and professor emeritus and senior lecturer at the University of Chicago. Considered one of the most influential legal thinkers of modern times, Professor Epstein's detailed review of the manuscript proved vital to this project.

Professor Paul M. Janicke teaches in the Intellectual Property and Information Law Program at the University of Houston Law Center. His critique and guidance early on in the development of the manuscript was invaluable.

Inventor and entrepreneur Louis Foreman is the founder and CEO of *Edison Nation*, an invention commercialization organization, and creator and executive producer of the Emmy Award-winning PBS TV show, *Everyday Edisons*. His insights

into the commercialization challenges faced by independent inventors were extremely helpful.

Finally, former U.S. Undersecretary of Commerce and Director of the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office David Kappos served as executive editor of the book. Especially for a subject like intellectual property that is so sharply defined by subtle nuances of law and practice, his unique expertise at the very center of the IP system helped to sculpt the manuscript's final shape.

I would be remiss if I did not mention the tireless leadership of Michelson 20MM executive producer Phil Kim, who was both midwife and guiding hand of this project from its inception four years ago until its final realization in April of 2016. He reminds us all just how valuable clear vision and calm steadiness in the face of trials really are in an effort such as this.

Similar praise and gratitude must be offered to Mayra Lombera and Marisa Moosekian, the Michelson 20MM producers who somehow managed to make all the myriad moving parts (and people) in this project fit together successfully. Whatever personality or production challenges arose, they somehow — I don't really know how — made this whole thing work.

The Founding Fathers of America created the world's first democratized intellectual property system for the common man. Now, the brightest minds in intellectual property have collaborated to democratize this once-inscrutable subject and bring you the world's first intellectual property textbook, online course, and videos series for readers and learners like you.

I hope you will find it enlightening — and useful.

Gary K. Michelson, M.D.

May, 2016

Gary Michelson Biography

Gary Karlin Michelson, M.D., is a distinguished Board Certified Orthopedic Spinal Surgeon and a Diplomate of the American Academy of Orthopedic Surgeons, who has devoted his life to helping others.

Dr. Michelson was born and raised in Philadelphia. At 17 years of age, he worked to put himself through college, and later, through medical school. He attended Temple University and Hahnemann Medical College (now Drexel University) followed by a fellowship in spinal surgery at St. Luke's, a joint program of Texas Medical Center in association with Baylor University.

Disappointed with the very low success rates and unreliability of the spinal surgical procedures at that time, he spent the next 20 years developing new implants, surgical procedures, and the instruments required to carry out those procedures. These technological breakthroughs have made spinal surgery far less invasive and far more effective. The Michelson procedures diminished the blood loss, pain, disability, and recovery time associated with the older procedures. These new procedures require minimal hospital time even to the point where many of them can be done on an outpatient basis. The likelihood of success for these newer procedures has been consistently very high, and the time for return to full activity has been substantially reduced. Throughout the world these new procedures have become the most dominant means of treating both the common spinal disorders as well as those which are the most debilitating. Millions of patients have already benefitted from these inventions.

Dr. Michelson is the most prolific inventor in the history of medicine, and is the sole named inventor of more than 950 already issued patents throughout the world. He is one of very few people ever inducted into both the National Inventors Hall of Fame as well as the National Academy of Inventors.

Dr. Michelson founded, funded, continues to fund and direct three private foundations.

The Michelson Medical Research Foundation was established by Dr. Michelson in 2005 with an

initial gift of 100 million dollars. The foundation funds cutting edge medical research that would be considered too avant garde to be funded by NIH or likely to receive funding by other conventional sources.

The Michelson Found Animals Foundation, (FAF), also founded in 2005, is directly involved in saving and improving the lives of companion animals. Michelson FAF is decreasing the number of animals coming into the municipal animal shelters to be euthanized by creating and funding both free and low cost spay & neuter facilities including mobile units to bring those services to where the need is the greatest.

Dr. Michelson and FAF were the main drivers and supporters of the creation and qualification of the California Pet Lovers License Plate, with funds going to support zero cost spay and neuter services.

FAF also provides microchips and registration for the life of the animal at zero or extremely low cost so that lost pets can be returned to their owners rather than be euthanized. Foundation grants and awards have been used to raise millions of dollars for use by the local shelters and rescues.

In another program the foundation goes into the municipal animal shelters and collects animals that would have been euthanized the following day and adopts them out from their own Adopt and Shops. Michelson Found Animals has grown substantially, and its 60 full-time employees and several hundred volunteers have touched the lives of 1.5 million pets and counting.

Finally, founded in 2010, The Michelson 20MM Foundation has been catalytic in increasing access, affordability, and efficacy in higher education through the use of innovative technologies and new educational models. It's $1.5 million grant to Openstax College in 2010 provided for the creation of the first high quality, digital, fully downloadable and interactive college level textbooks available to students at zero cost. With research showing over two-thirds of college students opting out of buying textbooks, and of those students, 94 percent say they suffer academically, addressing the broken textbook market has been of critical importance to

the Michelson 20MM Foundation. The Openstax College textbooks correspond to more than 50% of the courses required at the community college level for the first two years of a four-year program. The initiative's first 7 textbooks adopted for use in nearly 900 courses at community colleges, four-year colleges, universities, and high schools have saved students more that $13 million. Openstax plans to expand its library to 21 titles by 2017.

Michelson 20MM also founded the first philanthropic higher education accelerator focused on social impact investing. Ultimately, the goal is to serve as the bridge that connects institutions, innovators, and policymakers solving the most pressing issues in postsecondary and vocational education so that all students around the world should have access to an affordable, equitable, and high-quality education that leads to a meaningful career.

Inspired by its benefactor's robust career Michelson 20MM also led the development of in-depth intellectual property book, video series, and course, aimed at ordinary citizens with the guidance of highly knowledgeable consultants in patent law. *The Intangible Advantage* fills a great need in American education with a commitment to educate young people today on the basics of intellectual property and its value and role in science, business, arts, and the professions in today's knowledge economy.

Dr. Michelson has also personally funded two major reforestation programs resulting in the planting of more than seven million trees on approximately 50 square miles.

In conjunction with many others and on behalf of independent inventors, Dr. Michelson worked to help shape and ultimately to have passed the America Invents Act of 2011. In recognition of his efforts Dr. Michelson was invited by President Obama to attend the signing of that historical legislation at the White House.

In 2014 Dr. Michelson and his wife Alya personally gifted 50 million dollars to the University of Southern California to fund the creation of a

convergent bioscience center to produce real world medical breakthroughs in real time.

Dr. Michelson has been a longtime promoter and supporter of entrepreneurial competitions at various business schools throughout the country.

Dr. Gary Michelson is also the largest private underwriter of the Sabin Institute's research program to develop immunizing vaccines against the various parasitic worms that afflict more than one billion of the world's most destitute people, mostly women and children, to devastating effect.

Awards & Honors

- In 2006, Dr. Michelson received Paralyzed Veterans of America Award for outstanding medical research in the field of spinal disorders.
- In 2011, he was inducted into the National Inventors Hall of Fame in Washington, D.C.
- Also in 2011, he was invited by President Obama to the White House to witness the signing of the America Invents Act.
- 2014, Dr. Michelson was inducted into the National Academy of Inventors.
- In 2015, he received the Albert B. Sabin Humanitarian Award for his innovations that have enabled millions of people to live healthier, more productive lives.
- In 2016, Dr. Michelson received the B'nai B'rith International Distinguished Achievement Award for his service and dedicated leadership to improving people's lives.
- Dr. Michelson has been a member of the board of the Educational Foundation of the Intellectual Property Owners Association since 2010.

Table of Contents

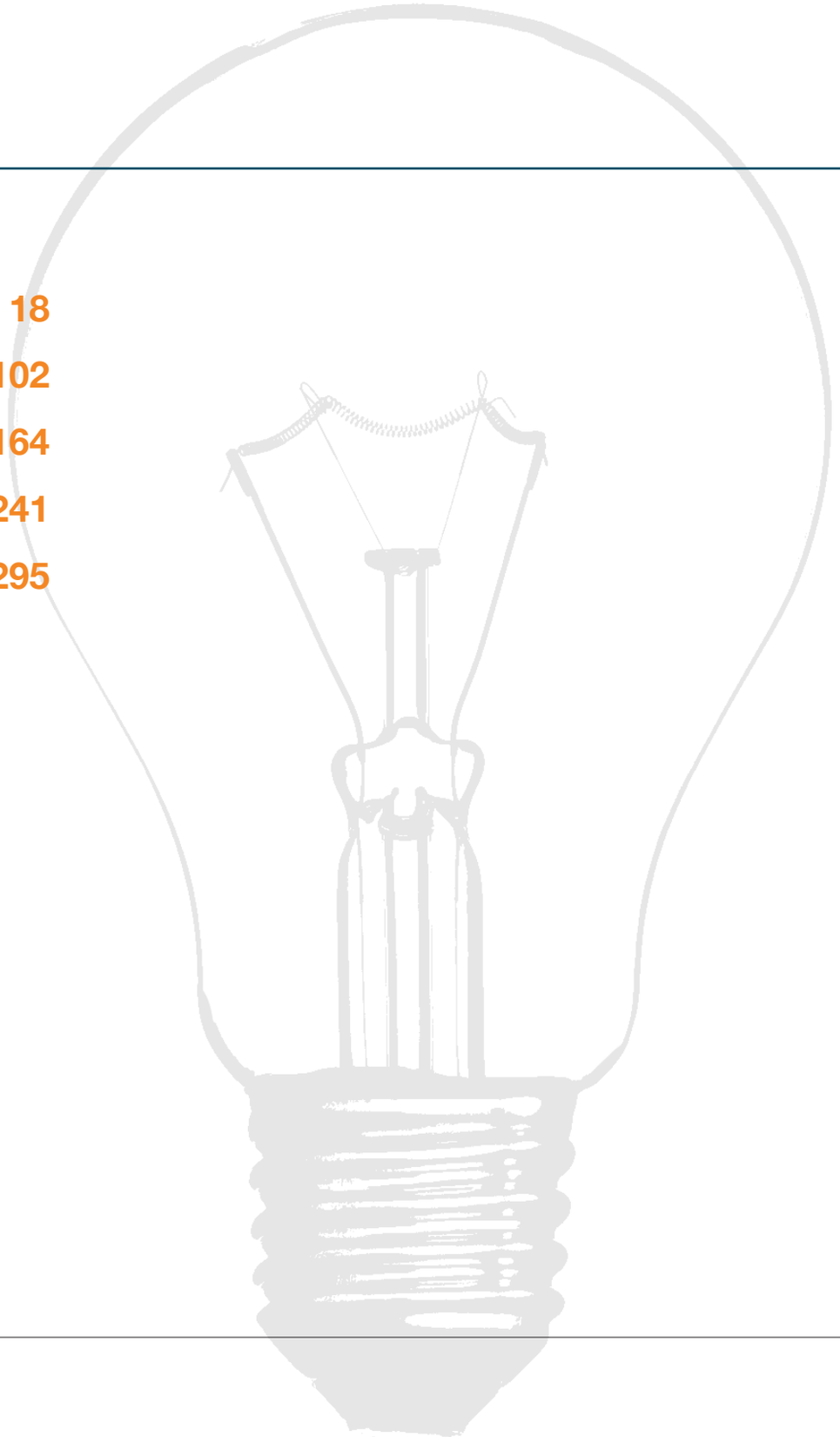
Chapter 1: Patent Basics 18

Chapter 2: Patent Enforcement 102

Chapter 3: Copyright Basics 164

Chapter 4: Trademark Basics 241

Chapter 5: Trade Secret Basics 295



CHAPTER

1 PATENT BASICS

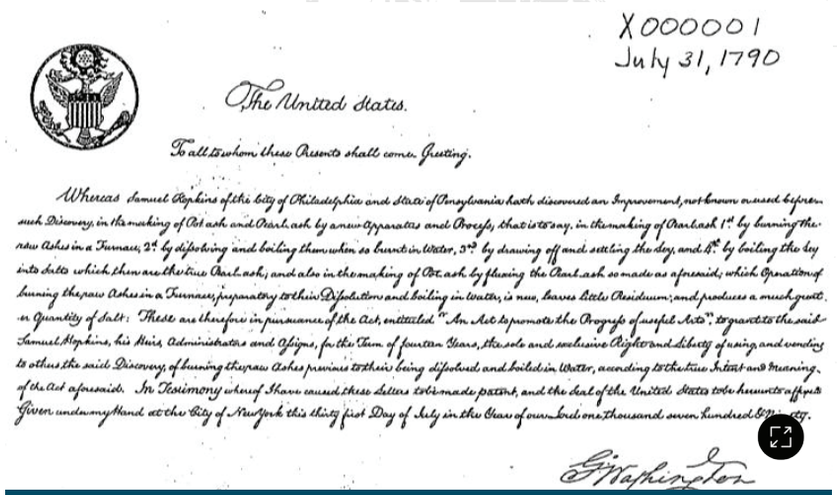
Chapter Summary

Patents give inventors exclusive rights to their inventions for a limited time in order to incentivize innovation and thereby benefit all of society. The patent system in the United States was designed so that any ordinary citizen—not just the elite or wealthy—could participate in creating technological change and growing the economy. Patents are granted based on merit—only inventions which are truly novel, non-obvious, and useful are granted a patent.

Key Terms

patent, *intellectual property*, *bargain or contract theory*, *"natural rights" theory*, *novelty*, *non-obviousness*, *utility*, *working requirements*

Section 1.1: The Foundations of Patent Protection



X000001
July 31, 1790

The United States.

To all to whom these Presents shall come. Greeting.

Whereas Samuel Hopkins of the City of Philadelphia and State of Pennsylvania hath discovered an Improvement, not known or used before such Discovery, in the making of Pot ash and Pearl ash by a new Apparatus and Process, that is to say, in the making of Pearl ash 1st by burning the raw Ashes in a Furnace, 2d by dissolving and boiling them when so burnt in Water, 3d by drawing off and settling the ley, and 4th by boiling the ley into Salts which then are the true Pearl ash, and also in the making of Pot ash by fluxing the Pearl ash so made as aforesaid; which Operation of burning the raw Ashes in a Furnace, preparatory to their Dissolution and boiling in Water, is new, leaves little Residuum, and produces a much greater Quantity of Salt: These are therefore in pursuance of the Act, entitled "An Act to promote the Progress of useful Arts", to grant to the said Samuel Hopkins, his Heirs, Administrators and Assigns, for the Term of fourteen Years, the sole and exclusive Right and liberty of using, and vending to others the said Discovery, of burning the raw Ashes previous to their being dissolved and boiled in Water, according to the true Intent and Meaning of the Act aforesaid. In Testimony whereof I have caused these Letters to be made patent, and the Seal of the United States to be hereunto affixed. Given under my Hand at the City of New York this thirty first Day of July in the Year of our Lord one Thousand seven hundred and Ninety.

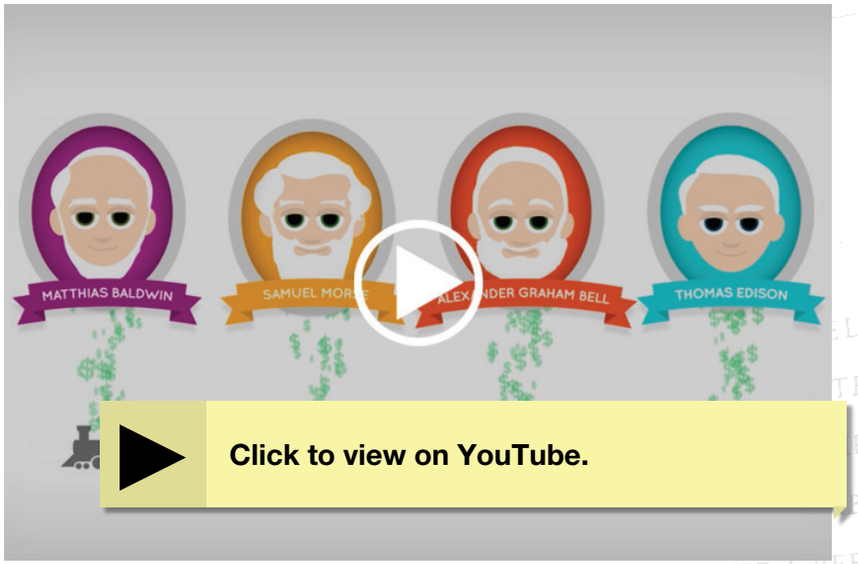
G Washington

After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Describe the philosophical logic behind granting patents.
- Describe the role of patents in fostering invention.

Do Patents Really Promote Innovation?

Before reading this section, please watch this overview video covering the usefulness of patents - how ironic that a system for granting exclusive rights to inventors is the greatest vehicle for knowledge-sharing and technology transfer ever devised by human beings.



What Is a Patent?

A **patent** is an **intellectual property** right granted by the government of a nation to an inventor that

gives him or her the exclusive right to the invention for up to 20 years, in exchange for disclosing the details of the new technology to society for its ultimate benefit.

In the United States, a patent is a legal instrument in the form of a document issued by the United States Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO). It gives the inventor of any new, useful, and non-obvious machine, process, manufacture, or composition of matter the right "to exclude others from making, using, offering for sale, or selling the invention throughout the United States or importing the invention into the United States" for a limited time in exchange for public disclosure of the invention.[1] A U.S. patent is only recognized domestically, and cannot be enforced in another country.

History of Patents in the United States

The legal foundation for U.S. intellectual property rights was laid by the Founders in 1787, in the very first Article of the U.S. Constitution, which outlined the precepts of our democratic society. In Article 1, Section 8, Clause 8 of the Constitution, Congress was given the authority to "promote the progress of Science and useful Arts, by securing for limited times to authors and inventors the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries".[2]

America was the first country in the world to enshrine intellectual property rights in its national constitution. And the Founders did this quite deliberately, says B. Zorina Khan, an economic historian at Bowdoin College whose book, *The Democratization of Invention: Patents and Copyrights in American Economic Development*, was awarded the Alice Hanson Jones Prize for an outstanding work in economic history.[3] "To the men who gathered in Philadelphia to 'promote the general welfare,'" Khan wrote, "it was self-evident that ideas, industrial and cultural inventions, and democratic values were integrally related. American democratic institutions would ensure that rewards accrued to the deserving based on [merit] rather than on the arbitrary basis of class, patronage, or privilege."

Indeed, the Founders viewed intellectual property rights as vital to the new nation's economic survival. As George Washington himself stated in his first annual address to Congress in 1790, "The advancement of agriculture, commerce, and manufactures by all proper means will not, I trust, need recommendation. But I cannot forbear intimating to you the expediency of giving effectual encouragement to the introduction of new and useful inventions."

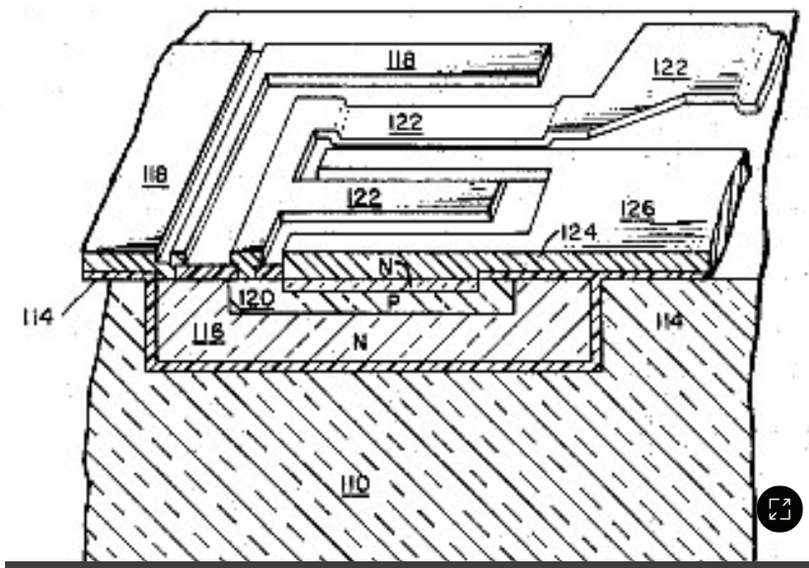
The question is, with all the challenges they faced, why did the Founders think it so crucial to create a strong intellectual property system? Their reasons were both universal—i.e., applying to all societies—and also very particular to America's revolutionary experience.

"Bargain" Theory vs. "Natural Rights" Theory

Every society that affirms intellectual property rights offers two justifications for doing so: the "bargain" or contract theory and the "natural rights" theory.

"Bargain" Theory

The "bargain" theory starts with the commonsense premise that people will be encouraged to invent new products and services that benefit society if they are likely to profit by doing so. The U.S. Constitution thus offers inventors a bargain: If you invent something useful—e.g., a cotton gin in 1794 that boosted agricultural production a hundredfold, or a semiconductor 163 years later



The semiconductor depicted in this 1969 patent is now part of the public domain. Image used under public domain.

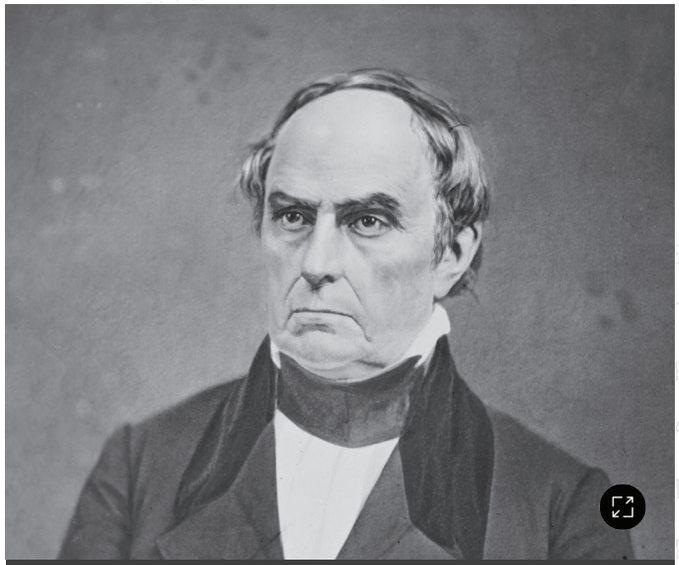
that sparked the creation of a trillion-dollar new industry and millions of jobs—then the Constitution and statutes say that, as a quid pro quo, you can have the exclusive right to that invention for a "limited time," after which it goes into the public domain and belongs to society.

There is something so simple yet economically potent about this concept. As Abraham Lincoln—America's only presidential patentee (No. 6469 for a device to lift boats over shoals)—noted, the beauty of the patent system is that it "added the fuel of interest to the fire of genius."

"Natural Rights" Theory

The "natural rights" theory, meanwhile, invokes another commonsense premise that most of us instinctively hold to be true: that the product of mental labor is by all rights the property of its creator, no less than the product of physical labor is the property of its creator (or of the person who purchases it from that creator). This is what Daniel Webster was referring to when he said, "The American Constitution does not attempt to give an inventor a right to his invention, or an author a right to his composition; it recognizes an original, pre-existing, inherent right of property in such invention or composition."

This right is not absolute, of course, and inventors' inherent rights may at times be circumscribed by national security or other concerns. But in exchange for disclosing to the public the nature and details of the invention, the Constitution authorizes the government to enforce the inventor's exclusive property right to that invention for a limited time.



Daniel Webster (1782–1852), U.S. politician. Image used under public domain.

Two important public policy goals are thus served. The inherent property rights of inventors and authors to their creations are protected, thereby helping to ensure that the wellsprings of creation and productivity do not dry up for lack of incentive. And yet the benefits derived from these inventions and creations are ultimately harnessed to the public good through disclosure, thus promoting the progress of the nation and "the general welfare" of its citizens.

How Patents Foster Innovation

To help understand why patent rights not only encourage inventors but also promote the wider diffusion of new technology for the benefit of society, economic historians Naomi Lamoreaux and the late Kenneth Sokoloff suggested the following thought experiment:

> "Imagine a world in which there was no patent system to guarantee inventors property rights to their discoveries. In such a world, inventors would have every incentive to be secretive and to guard jealously their discoveries from competitors [because those discoveries] could, of course, be copied with impunity.
>
> "By contrast, in a world where property rights in invention were protected, the situation would be very different. Inventors would now feel free to promote their discoveries as widely as possible so as to maximize returns either from commercializing their ideas themselves or from [licensing] rights to the idea to others. The protections offered by the patent system would thus be an important stimulus to the exchange of technological information in and of themselves. Moreover, it is likely that the cross-fertilization that resulted from these information flows would be a potent stimulus to technological change".[4]

It's more than just "likely." Extensive research in the United States and other nations shows that patents have served as a powerful stimulant to technological knowledge sharing. A 2006 survey published by the French economists Francois Leveque and Yann Meniere, for example, found that 88 percent of U.S., European, and Japanese businesses rely

upon the information disclosed in patents to keep up with technology advances and direct their own R&D efforts.[5]

Patents Don't Block Innovation, They Promote It

From the earliest days of the United States, patent and legal records show how inventors (including Thomas Edison) regularly kept abreast of developments in their fields. They did this by studying patent descriptions published by both the USPTO as well as by industry publications such as *Scientific American*, which was founded in 1845 by Munn and Company, the leading patent agency of the nineteenth century, expressly to spread new technological knowledge and facilitate the buying and selling of patents. For example, Elias E. Reis—inventor of a number of devices to exploit the heat generated by electrical currents—reported that when he read in the *Official Gazette* in 1886 about a patent issued to Elihu Thomson for a new method of electric welding, "there immediately opened up to my mind a field of new applications to which I saw I could apply my system of producing heat in large quantities."[6] In many industries, specialized journals kept readers informed about new patents of interest.

In fact, new research in 2012 discovered that rather than blocking development, Thomas Edison's seminal 1880 incandescent lamp patent (No. 223,898) actually "stimulated downstream development work" that resulted in "new technologies of commercial significance [including] the Tesla coil, hermetically sealed connectors, chemical vapor deposition process, tungsten lamp filaments and phosphorescent lighting that led to today's fluorescent lamps."[7]

Even the word "patent" signifies its social purpose of disclosure. It is derived from the Latin patent meaning "open," and is the present participle of "patēre," meaning "to stand wide open."

This explains the origin of the term "letters patent" ("letters that lie open"), which refer to the patent documents issued by the English Crown. These were not closed with a seal but were instead kept open, with the seal hanging at the bottom, notifying all not to infringe upon the patent.

SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN.

THE ADVOCATE OF INDUSTRY AND ENTERPRISE, AND JOURNAL OF MECHANICAL AND OTHER IMPROVEMENTS.

VOLUME I. NEW-YORK, THURSDAY, AUGUST 16, 1845. NUMBER 1.

IMPROVED RAIL-ROAD CARS.

CATALOGUE OF AMERICAN PATENTS ISSUED IN 1844.

Inventors, like Thomas Edison, likely read through periodicals, such as *Scientific American* which published a current catalogue of American patents in each issue. Image used under public domain.

These patent letters were issued by Queen Victoria in 1900, creating the office of Governor-General of Australia as part of the process of Federation. Image used under public domain.

As with any economic and legal instrument, patents have the potential to slow innovation if their grant of exclusive rights is too broad. But the overwhelming preponderance of economic research and real-world experience demonstrate that, on balance, intellectual property rights tend to stimulate invention, economic growth, and the diffusion of new technological knowledge in every country where they exist.

This fact by itself, however, does not explain why the U.S. patent system became a model for much of the world. To understand why it did—and how it helped build the most successful economy in the history of the world—we must examine the revolutionary design of the U.S. patent system itself and the ways in which it overcame the weaknesses of earlier patent systems.

Check Your Understanding

Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 4 | Section 1.1

A patent gives an inventor the exclusive right to which of the following?

- ◯ The ability to profit from his or her invention
- ◯ The ability to prevent others from making, using, offering for sale, or selling the invention
- ◯ The ability to prevent others from learning the secrets of the invention

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Section 1.2: The Weakness of Early Patent Systems

After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Outline the history of patents from antiquity through the 1700s.
- Identify flaws in early European patent systems.

History of Patents: 500 BC to the 1700s

Given the commonsense logic of granting patents to stimulate invention, it comes as no surprise that patent-like incentives date all the way back to antiquity. In the ancient Greek city of Sybaris (located in what is now southern Italy) in 500 BC, "encouragement was held out to all who should discover any new refinement in luxury, the profits arising from which were secured to the inventor by patent for the space of a year."[8]

The first formal patent legal institutions were developed in the Republic of Venice in the mid-1400s. The Venetian Statute of 1474 decreed that the inventors of new and useful devices would be protected from infringers and copiers for ten years so long as they disclosed the details of their inventions. Most Venetian patents were granted in the field of glass making, and when a large number of these glass makers emigrated to other countries in Europe, they sought similar protections from the local authorities. This is how the notion of patent rights, and their expression in patent legal systems, began to spread and gain acceptance throughout Europe.

Initially, however, English and French monarchs used patents not simply to stimulate invention, but also to grant exclusive trade monopolies to those favored by the court. In the reign of Elizabeth I in the latter 1500s, some 50 patent monopolies were granted over the trade in such staples as salt, soap, starch, iron, and paper. Critics said these "enriched the monopolist and robbed the community" while doing absolutely nothing to stimulate new technology or industry.

A growing public outcry ultimately forced Elizabeth's successor James I to revoke these grants of trade monopolies in 1610. In 1624, the Statute of Monopolies formally repealed the practice and henceforth restricted patent rights solely to new inventions.

European countries made several other important innovations in their early patent systems. In the mid-1500s, France became the first to publish patent descriptions from inventors who chose to submit them. England under the reign of Queen Anne (1702–1714) was the first to require inventors to submit a written description of their patent to "describe and ascertain the nature of the invention and the manner in which it is to be performed." And in 1729, France began to publish abbreviated digests of patent descriptions, but these were intermittent and subject to delays of up to 60

Slide Show

Slide shows available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Under the reign of Queen Anne, English Parliament passed legislation requiring inventors to submit written descriptions of their work. Image used under public domain.

History of Patents

1700s France became the first country to publish patent descriptions from inventors, if the inventors chose to submit them. England was the first to require submitted written descriptions of inventions. In 1729, France began publishing abbreviated descriptions of the patents, but publication was inconsistent and did not much contribute to the spread of new technological information.

years after the patents were originally granted. As might be expected, this lack of regularity limited the technological knowledge sharing that is one of the great benefits of a patent system.

Flaws of Early Patent Systems

Old World patent systems suffered from other major weaknesses as well. Patents for inventions imported from other countries were regularly granted, increasing the incentive for would-be patentees to copy the creative work of others rather than invent for themselves. And there was generally no systematic examination of patents by technical experts, in part because this was viewed as an intrusion upon the prerogatives of the Crown.

But the biggest problem with early patent systems was that they all shared a tendency to reinforce the wealth and prerogatives of elites, not the welfare and productive capacity of the whole of society. In Britain, patents were favors granted "by grace of the Crown" and were often only secured through court connections. They were also "subject to any restrictions the government cared to impose, including the expropriation of the patent without compensation."[9]

What's more, patent application fees were prohibitively high—more than 11 times the per capita annual income of the average British citizen—which put the system out of reach of all but the wealthy. Yet ironically, in the parliamentary debates over the patent system, the exclusion of the "working classes" was regarded as one of the chief virtues of the British patent system.

British patent law also severely limited the ability of inventors to sell or license the rights to their discoveries, as noted in a contemporary 1832 book entitled *A Practical Treatise on the Law of Patents for Inventions*.[10] This restriction, along with "working requirements"—these were regulations that forced patentees to manufacture products based on their patents within two or three years of issuance or lose their patent rights—limited innovation activity mainly to those who had

the factories (or the ready capital to build them) needed to produce such products.

These rules had two significant effects upon the British economy. They restricted innovation to only a small sector of the population rather than unleashing the creativity and productivity of the whole people. And they created a bias toward inventions that enhanced the market dominance of incumbent, capital-intensive industries rather than opening up new markets for the sorts of disruptive new industries that usually drive economic progress.

"European societies were organized in ways that concentrated power in the hands of elites and facilitated [parasitic] rent-seeking by favored producers," notes historian B. Zorina Khan. "The organization of invention was no exception. A society that restricts [invention] to elites can generate exceptional gains early on, but the initial spurt is unlikely to be maintained."

Indeed, the result in Britain was unbalanced and narrowly focused economic growth. Inventors faced high transaction and monetary costs, a limited market for their inventions, and a great deal of uncertainty. Diffusion of new technological knowledge was severely inhibited, and the rate of technological change was adversely affected as a result. Eventually, Britain's initial leadership of the Industrial Revolution had more to do with its large existing commercial holdings and manufacturing base, and its vast stores of amassed capital, than with systemic or broad-based encouragement of innovation within British society.

The Changing Tide

The elitist nature of early patent systems reflected the feudal economic relations that dominated that era. But by the late eighteenth century, capitalist economies were beginning to emerge across Europe, and in Britain, nationwide lobbies of manufacturers and patentees called for an overhaul of the patent system to bring it in line with this new economy. The needed reinvention would come not from Britain, however, nor even

from France, which had its own democratic revolution soon after America's. Instead, it took place in the newly liberated United States, where a vibrant capitalism unburdened by centuries of entrenched feudalism was developing.

This, then, is the story of one of the most admired of all American inventions—the modern democratized patent system, now used widely throughout the world.

Check Your Understanding

Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 3 | Section 1.2

The Statute of Monopolies in 1624 ended the practice of granting patents for which of the following?

- ◯ Inventions that were not truly novel
- ◯ The Crown's favored inventors
- ◯ Trade in staples such as salt or soap rather than for actual inventions
- ◯ Inventions that helped industrialists monopolize whole industries

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

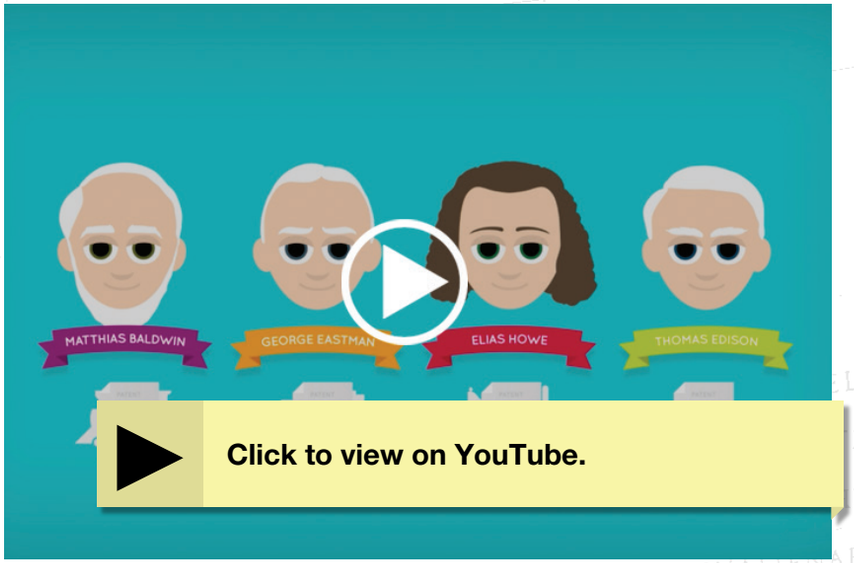
Section 1.3: America's Uniquely Democratic Patent System

After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Explain the role of the Founding Fathers in developing the U.S. patent system.
- Explain the six unique features of the U.S. patent system.

A Patent System For Everyone

Before reading this section, please watch this overview video covering why America developed the world's first patent system for the common man, and what we got out of it as a result (hint: the strongest economy on the face of the earth).



Never mind that intellectual capital accounts for 55 percent of total U.S. GDP today.[11] Or that it represents up to 80 percent of the market value of all public companies in the U.S.[12] To most citizens today, patents and other intellectual property are inscrutable mysteries. But to America's Founding

Fathers, they were matters of the highest national importance.

The Challenge Facing the Founding Fathers

The men who led the revolution and were later tasked with writing a Constitution were not concerned simply with creating lasting political structures that could defend the hard-won freedom and sovereignty of the newly liberated colonies. They also struggled to stimulate the rapid growth of industry to ensure the new nation's economic survival.

The survival of the United States of America was far from certain in those days. It was a backward agrarian economy, dependent on imports and lacking major domestic industry, with a population of barely three million inhabitants. Britain, meanwhile, with whom the United States had just fought a war and would soon fight another, had three times the U.S. population, boasted the most powerful economy on Earth, and was the unrivaled leader of the emerging Industrial Revolution.

In this political cartoon from 1780, the Lion represents Great Britain. Though it has lost its "paw" to the expense of funding the war against America, the size of the lion represents its still considerable strength. Image used under public domain.

It was, therefore, a critical task of the leaders of the new American nation to design institutions—including a patent system—that would encourage economic activity and investments to spur the growth of America's primitive economy.

It's important to note that although the Founders deeply believed in democratic ideals of government, they were not wild-eyed idealists. They were

very practical men who faced an overwhelming challenge: How do you build a national economy from scratch, one that can prosper without British imports? To do that, they needed to mobilize every asset they had.

Unlike Britain, however, America had no significant capital or commercial assets. In fact, the American standard of living at that time was actually lower than in many of their South American neighbors.[13] All America had was abundant, but still untapped, natural resources, and a population widely regarded in the world as uniquely enterprising and independent minded.

Ours was the world's fastest-growing population, doubling in size every 20 years. Americans were also widely literate (albeit mostly lacking in higher education) and informed by what Washington Irving called "the general diffusion of knowledge."

Most important, unlike the tenant farmers and laborers who made up the bulk of England's rigid class society, the vast majority of Americans were free-holding small farmers, merchants, shopkeepers, artisans, and mechanics—the forerunners of what we today call the middle class—who were possessed with what publisher Hezekiah Niles called "a universal ambition to go forward."

This was America's principal asset, their ace in the hole. And men such as George Washington, Thomas Jefferson, and James Madison knew they had to find a way to unleash the creative and productive potential of these independent citizens if the country was to industrialize and survive.

Incentives Needed to Spur Economic Growth

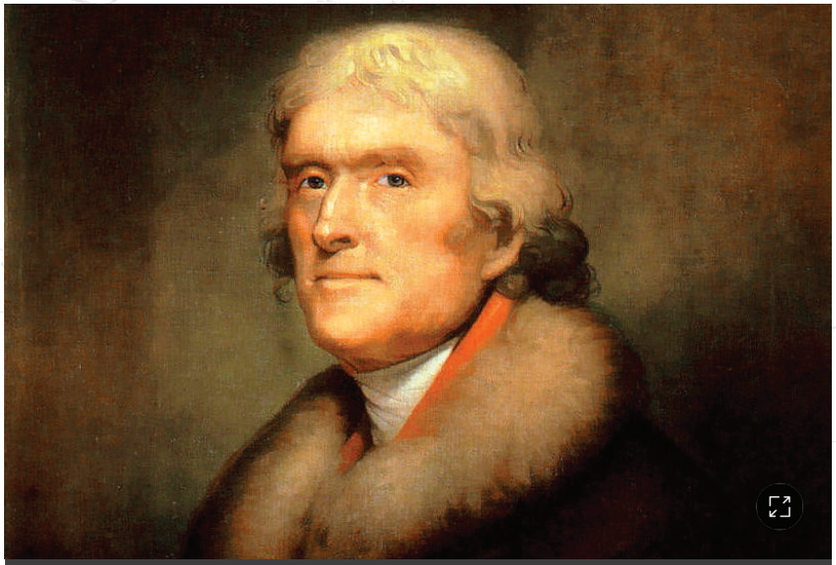
As Jefferson wrote to his daughter Martha in 1787, it was precisely because America was bereft of Europe's vast resources and left to its own devices that "we are obliged to invent and execute; to find means within ourselves, and not to lean on others."

But how to do that? From the historical record, it appears that the Founders quite consciously sought to construct a patent system that would do what no other patent system in the world had ever done

before—namely, stimulate the inventive genius and entrepreneurial energy of the common man.

As noted earlier, the first thing they did was to affirm inventors' and authors' rights in the U.S. Constitution itself. Although the intellectual property clause was ultimately adopted by unanimous consent of the delegates on September 5, 1787, there had been some debate about the issue. Thomas Jefferson in particular had expressed reservations about the wisdom of granting "temporary monopolies" (i.e., patent rights), given that Americans had just waged a bloody war of independence to overthrow the British monopoly of trade and political power. But as other delegates noted, and Jefferson eventually came to realize, a monopoly of trade is a far cry from the temporary incentives granted to inventors in return for the benefits they provide society.

"How can the exclusive right of an invention be compared with a monopoly in trade?" D.P. Holloway, a Commissioner of Patents, would later argue in his 1863 annual report to Congress. "How can the exclusive privilege to sell salt in Elizabeth's time, which added not one bushel to the production,



Initially skeptical of patent rights, Thomas Jefferson later realized the benefit they can bring to society. Image used under public domain.

but which enriched the monopolist and robbed the community, and the exclusive right of Whitney to his cotton gin, which has added hundreds of millions [of dollars] to the products and exports of the country, be both branded, with equal justice, with the odious name of monopoly?"[14]

In the words of Louis Wolowski, Chair of Industrial Economics at the Conservatoire des Arts et Métiers: "[Inventors'] rights under patents, are called

'monopolies' only from the poverty of language, which has failed to express in words a distinction which no less clearly exists."

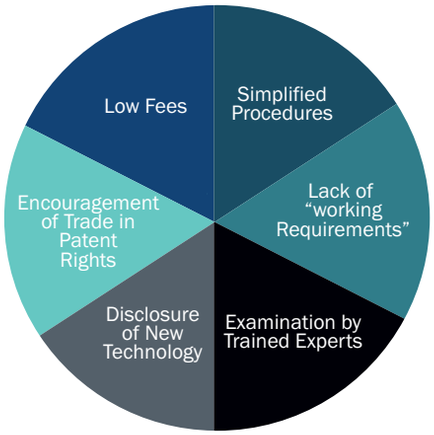
The Founders understood this distinction clearly. "Rather than monopolists," says historian Khan, "patentees were viewed as beneficent contributors to progress, and the consistent goal of those who shaped the system was to encourage domestic ingenuity, whatever the social class of the inventor."[15]

Or as James Madison put it in Federalist Paper 43, "The public good fully coincides with the [patent rights] of individuals."

Creating a New Type of Patent System

The real genius of the Founders, however, lay in the way they consciously integrated democratic principles into the design of the world's first modern patent system—principles that had a profound impact on the pace and direction of U.S. economic growth. These were reflected in six fundamental innovations in our patent system that departed from European practice.

Six Fundamental Innovations of the U.S. Patent System



The six unique features of the U.S. patent system include low fees, simplified procedures, disclosure of new technology developments, examination of applications by trained experts, lack of "working requirements," and encouragement of trade in patent rights.

Low Fees: Making Patents Affordable

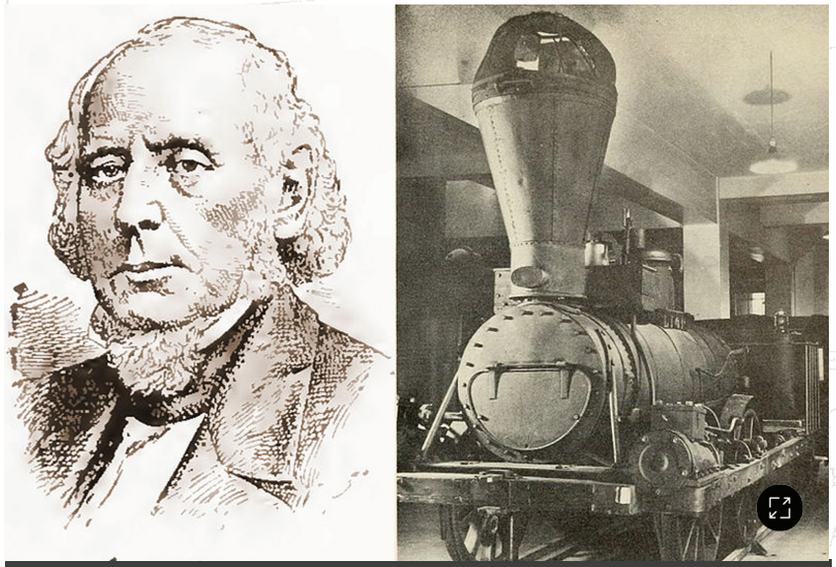
The original patent law passed by Congress on April 10, 1790, deliberately set patent fees to a level any ordinary citizen could afford—initially $3.70, but three years later raised to $30. This was still

less than 5 percent of the rate in Britain. Patent fees remained $30 for the next 70 years, ensuring that virtually any citizen could participate in the Industrial Revolution.

The results were dramatic. Whereas most of Britain's handful of inventors came from privilege, the vast majority of America's thousands of inventors came from humble beginnings. They included farmers, factory workers, merchants, mechanics, and other artisans.

Of the 160 so-called "great inventors" of nineteenth-century America, over 70 percent had only a primary or secondary school education. Many had no formal schooling at all. And some of the most famous names in American invention—Matthias Baldwin (locomotive), George Eastman (roll film), Elias Howe (sewing machine), and Thomas Edison (electric light and phonograph)—had to leave school early to support their families.

What's more, in another sign of economic democratization, most U.S. inventors had no formal scientific or technical training. They had only the general knowledge common to citizens of the day, plus whatever they taught themselves. What distinguished them was their ingenuity in applying that general knowledge to the practical problems of daily existence, and then exploiting the commercial opportunities that arose as a result. In short, they were entrepreneurial.



Some of America's greatest inventing minds benefited from the economic democratization of the U.S. patent system. Matthias Baldwin, pictured at left, had to leave school at age 16 to support his family. He eventually went on to invent the steam locomotive, shown at right. Image of Baldwin used under public domain. Image of locomotive used under public domain.

"The rapid growth of inventive activity during early American industrialization was characterized by a disproportionate increase in the involvement of segments of the population with relatively common sets of skills and knowledge," note Sokoloff and Khan. "Rather than being accounted for by an elite who possessed rare technical knowledge or commanded large amounts of financial resources, the rise in patenting coincided with a broadening of the ranks of patentees to encompass many individuals, occupations, and geographic districts."[16]

Making the patent system inexpensive invited everyone's participation. In the words of Englishman John Standfield, quoted in an 1880 issue of *Scientific American*, "The cheap patent law of the United States has been and still is the secret of the great success of that country."

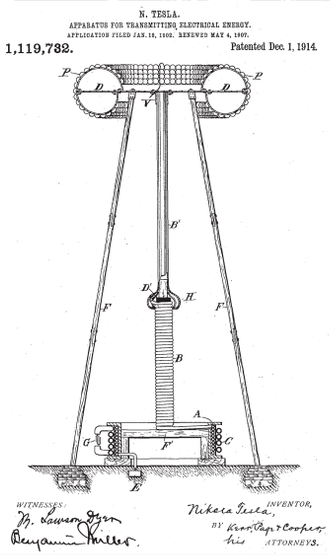
Simplifying Application Procedures

The Founders greatly simplified administrative procedures in applying for a patent. This was no small thing when you consider that British applicants were forced to seek approval from seven different offices, and then twice—twice!—obtain the signature of the King. If they wanted a patent that covered Scotland and Ireland as well, they needed approval from ten more offices. British patent procedures were so Byzantine, in fact, that author Charles Dickens wrote a spoof of them entitled *A Poor Man's Tale of a Patent*, in which his main character, an inventor, is forced to seek approvals from 34 offices, some of which had been abolished years before and no longer existed. Obviously, few inventors could hope to run this gauntlet successfully unless they had the wherewithal to hire very expensive patent agents to assist them.

In the United States, on the other hand, applications only needed the approval of a single patent office, which created repositories throughout the country where inventors could drop off their applications and models and have them forwarded to the patent office at government expense. Rural inventors could even apply for a patent through the mail—postage free!

This last perk for rural inventors turned out to have a big impact on the course of U.S. economic

development. While most British industrial breakthroughs were confined to London or other big cities, U.S. inventions were widely distributed across the country, in urban and rural areas both. The result was broader-based economic growth and less income inequality in the United States.



From the patent application from Nikola Tesla for Apparatus for Transmitting Electrical Energy. Tesla's innovation improved electricity service and spurred economic growth throughout the United States. Image used under public domain.

Spreading New Technological Knowledge

Another unique feature of the U.S. patent system was its systematic effort to spread new technological knowledge throughout society, thereby creating a virtuous circle of innovation begetting more innovation. In Britain, patents were only open to public inspection after paying a fee, and until 1852 were not even officially printed, published, or indexed. In France, printed information about patents was limited to brief titles in patent indexes, intermittently published and only available in the office in which these had been originally filed.

By contrast, the first U.S. patent law explicitly stated that "copies of patent Specification together with similar Models [are] to be made at the public Expence and lodged in each state."[17] In addition, as noted in the previous section, a plethora of publications by government and industry enabled any citizen with an interest to keep abreast of the latest patented technologies.

Examining Patents for Validity

In a very crucial departure from Old World practice, the Founders created the world's first examination system

for patents to ensure their **novelty**, **non-obviousness**, and **utility**. The examinations were initially conducted by a committee composed of the Secretary of State (Thomas Jefferson), Secretary of War (Henry Knox), and Attorney General (Edmund Randolph). But this was found to be cumbersome, so in 1793 a simple registration system was established. It turned out, however, that without the examination of applications for novelty, non-obviousness, and utility, the validity of issued patents began to be questioned. So the reforms of the 1836 Patent Act specified that henceforth applications would be scrutinized by technically trained examiners to ensure that the invention represented a genuine advance in the state of the art.

For the first time anywhere in the world, the criteria for granting a patent depended solely upon the merits of the application rather than the identity or the mere say-so of the inventor.

The situation was very different in Europe. In France, the following caveat was printed on each patent: "The government, in granting a patent without prior examination, does not in any manner guarantee either the priority, merit or success of an invention." Imagine trying to interest a group of investors in your new invention with that kind of warning label attached to it!

In Britain, meanwhile, the lack of any examination of patent validity made the purchase of a patent right highly speculative and costly, thereby limiting investment in new technology.

By contrast, says Khan, "the U.S. examination system reduced uncertainty about the validity of patents, and provided [interested parties] with a signal of [their] potential value." This proved to be crucial in facilitating the growth of an extensive market in the sale and licensing of valuable patent rights—the first large-scale market of this type in the world.

No "Working Requirements" Reduced Monopoly Control

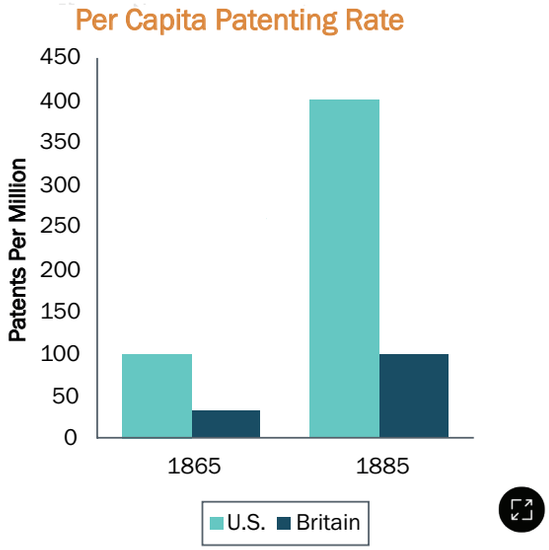
The fifth distinguishing feature of the U.S. patent system was the lack of any sort of "**working requirements**." In the debate over HR-41, the bill that became the first U.S. patent law in

1790, "the Senate suggested requiring patentees to make products based on the patent or license others to do so. But the House rejected this as an infringement of patentees' rights."[18]

Indeed, the Founders believed working requirements would only strengthen monopoly power and skew invention toward incumbent industry by limiting patents to those with the factories (or the capital to build them) needed to manufacture products from their inventions.[19]

In short, the Founding Fathers of this nation deliberately and quite consciously created what we now call "**non-practicing entities**" (NPEs) in order to expand the pool of inventors in their then-backward economy to include ordinary citizens without the wealth or resources to commercialize their own inventions. And it worked, leading to a dramatic surge in innovation in nineteenth-century America as large numbers of ordinary citizens started inventing and then licensing their discoveries to enterprises for commercialization.

By 1865, the U.S. per capita patenting rate was more than triple that of Britain's, according to the annual reports from the commissioners of patents in both countries, and by 1885, it was more than quadruple that of Britain. Each U.S. patentee was also far more prolific than his or her British counterpart, so by mid-century, the United States was patenting five times



A graphical representation of the rate of patents granted in the United States versus Britain.

the number of inventions as Britain each year, even though the populations were then equal in size.

Creating a Market for New Technology

The sixth unique feature of the U.S. patent system—and along with the refusal to impose working requirements, the one

that had the greatest impact on future U.S. economic growth—was "an explicit provision for the sale of patent rights [that] both the courts and the U.S. Patent Office acted to facilitate."[20]

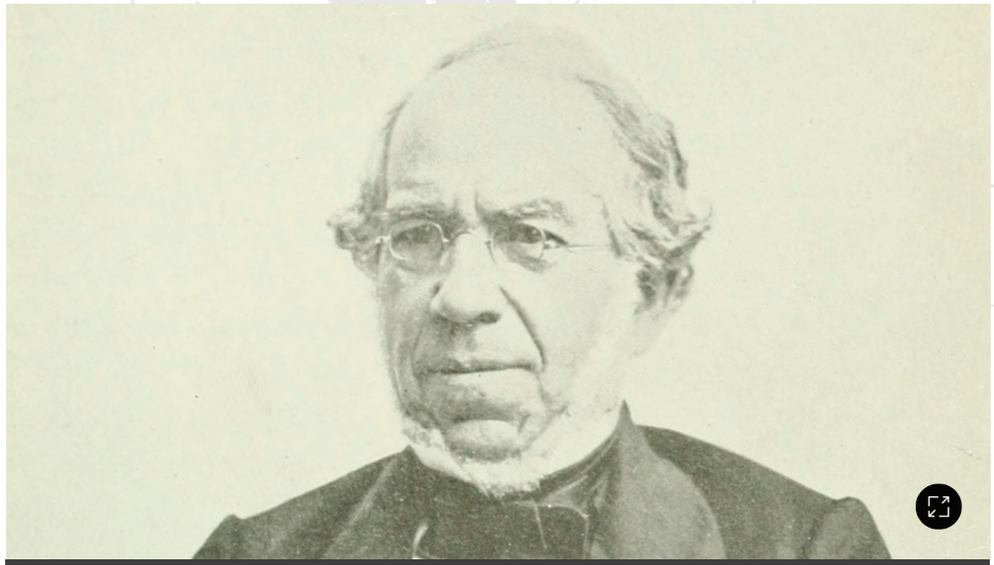
Why facilitate the buying and selling of patents? Because doing so enabled ordinary worker or farmer inventors without the capital to commercialize their own discoveries to still participate in inventive activity and earn income by licensing or selling their patents to enterprises that could. This ability to license patent rights (along with the low application fees) turned inventing into a new career path for thousands of poor but technically creative citizens.[21] It also proved to be a powerful means of mobilizing capital for investment in new technologies and their commercialization into new products and services for society.

That patents could be used as tradable assets by non-practicing entities without the wealth to commercialize their own discoveries was a wholly unique feature of the American patent system. By 1880, 85 percent of all U.S. patents were licensed by their inventors, compared with 30 percent of British patents.[22]

Patent licensing, in fact, was the principal means by which new discoveries were commercialized in the decades before the early twentieth-century emergence of in-house corporate R&D departments. Publications such as *Scientific American* were founded specifically to facilitate the trade in patents, and it regularly featured lists of new and interesting patents, which commercial enterprises then licensed or purchased to use in their product development efforts.

American Bell Telephone's new product pipeline, for example, operated like most others at the time. According to its 1894 annual report, the company's R&D department licensed 73 patents from outside inventors, while developing only 12 from its own employees.

Thomas Blanchard was a typical inventor-licensor. He was the son of a small farmer who invented and patented a mechanical tack-maker in 1806 that could fabricate five hundred tacks per minute, each superior to tacks made by hand. He sold the



Thomas Blanchard, an American inventor, made a career out of inventing and licensing the rights to his inventions. He serves as a prime example of the inventor-licensor model, which allowed many inventors to generate income. Image used under public domain.

rights to his machine for $5,000, quite a sum in those days. He then invented a lathe to produce uniform gun stocks, and the patent he received for it enabled him to attract investors for the production of those gun stocks for the local Boston market. Blanchard also leased his patent rights to gun producers nationwide, as well as to manufacturers of tool handles and wheel spokes. The income he generated from patent licensing enabled him to make inventing his full-time career. He went on to invent a wood-bending machine, an upriver steamboat, and a steam wagon that was used until the introduction of railroads in the United States, and received a total of 25 patents during his career.

According to a 2013 Congressionally mandated Government Accountability Office (GAO) report on NPEs, "History is filled with examples of successful inventors who did not develop products based on the technologies they patented." It specifically cited the case of Elias Howe, who patented a method of making a lockstitch but did not produce sewing machines. Instead, Howe licensed his patents to the Singer Company, which then deployed Howe's invention in its sewing machines.[23]

Patent licensing, scholars have found, was facilitated by an array of intermediaries—lawyers, venture financiers, and patent licensing agents—who "lowered the transaction costs and improved the efficiency" of the trade in and

commercialization of patented technology. "By enabling, indeed encouraging, inventors to focus on what they did best [i.e., invention], this division of labor gave rise to the most technologically fertile period in American history."[24]

The Positive Effects of Licensing

The Founders' decision to foster NPEs and patent licensing proved crucial to America's rapid technological progress and economic growth. Indeed, patent records from the nineteenth century reveal that more than two-thirds of the "great inventors" of the Industrial Revolution, including Thomas Edison and Elias Howe, were NPEs who specialized in invention and licensed some or all of their patents to outside enterprises for development into new products.[25]

Had the United States followed the approach of older European patent systems and limited patent rights solely to inventors who made or sold products—or prevented them from licensing their

The steam engine became a symbol of American progress during the Industrial Revolution. Such technology was made possible by a patenting system that provided financial incentive for inventors to create and license their work. Licensed under CC-BY SA 2.0 via flickr.

patents—America might not have even had an Industrial Revolution.

In any event, the result of this division of labor between invention and production was exactly as Adam Smith predicted:

> "The growth of market trade in patents raised the returns to invention and encouraged a division

of labor whereby technologically-creative individuals increasingly specialized in their comparative advantage—invention," noted Lamoreaux and Sokoloff. "It was the expanded opportunities to trade in patented technologies that enabled the independent inventors of this golden age to flourish—and that stimulated the growth of inventive activity generally."

The benefits of that division of labor remain visible today, embodied in the thousands of university and other NPE patents licensed by companies large and small each year, as well as by the positive U.S. balance of trade in patent licensing, estimated to be worth at least $150 billion annually as of 2006. More than 5,000 new products and 7,000 new companies have been created with the help of university NPE patents alone in the last 30 years.[26] And licensors of patented technology help the United States maintain its technology leadership in critical economic sectors.

A New Species called "Patent Trolls"

To be sure, there is new a species of NPE known as "patent trolls" who use low-quality patents to extort so-called "license fees" from small businesses unable to pay the cost of standing up to them in court. But their activities have nothing in common with real patent licensing.

Typically, these patent owners send form letters to hundreds, or in some cases thousands, of random small businesses, claiming with little or no evidence that they are "infringing" their patents. These letters then demand so-called "licensing fees" ranging from one to several thousands of dollars to avoid a patent infringement lawsuit that could cost those businesses far more to defend against in court—even if the business owner is innocent of any infringement.

Beginning in mid-2013, a tsunami of bad faith demand letters began targeting small businesses, sparking wide protest. The National Federation of

Independent Businesses (NFIB) and many other business groups and trade associations demanded action, and Washington responded in 2014 with several pieces of proposed reform legislation. By early 2015, the Federal Trade Commission (FTC) had acted against one sender of bad faith demand letters, and federal legislation to rein in such abuses seemed likely to pass.

At the state level, meanwhile, by early 2015, 15 states had enacted laws to curb abusive patent demand letters, and 11 others were actively considering similar bills. In addition, the attorneys general of several states have used consumer protection laws against making false claims to force these "patent trolls" to stop sending their extortionist demand letters.

These abusive patent litigants should not be confused with legitimate NPEs, however, whose primary business is invention and technology licensing, not extorting so-called "license fees" from innocent businesses. Patent licensing facilitates the transfer and commercialization of technology into new products and services and promotes U.S. economic growth.

A Patent System for the Common Man

In sum, these six unique features of the U.S. patent system—low fees, simplified procedures, examination of applications by trained experts, systematic disclosure of new technological knowledge, lack of "working requirements," and encouragement of robust trade in patent rights—all had a powerfully beneficial impact on the nation's economic growth.

But none of that would have been possible were it not for the broad-based democratic rule of law in the United States and the critical role played by the U.S. legal system in interpreting and enforcing America's revolutionary patent laws.

Check Your Understanding

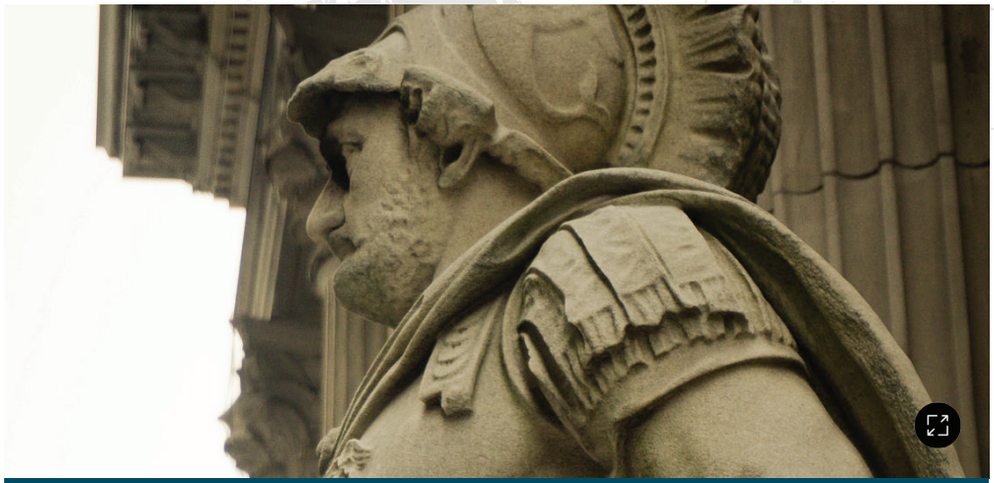
Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 3 | Section 1.3

The Founding Fathers created the U.S. patent system with which overarching goal in mind?

- ◯ To defend America's newly won independence
- ◯ To rapidly stimulate the growth of domestic industry
- ◯ To create advanced new weapons for America's young army
- ◯ None of the above

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Section 1.4: The Role of the U.S. Legal System



After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Describe the differences between U.S. and European patent laws.
- Describe the history of patent litigation in the United States.

U.S. Patent Law vs. European Patent Law

Just as with any other property right, patent rights would be meaningless without the ability to enforce them in court. And from the earliest days of the patent system, says Khan, "Our legal system remained true to the Constitution in the belief that the defense of rights in patented invention was important in fostering industrial and economic development."

In Britain and other European countries, patents were viewed as "pernicious monopolies that restricted community rights and [Had] to be carefully monitored and narrowly construed."[27] The enforcement and interpretation of patent laws by the courts in Europe also tended to be highly variable and dependent upon the whims of each individual judge.

In the United States, however, early courts treated inventors' patent rights with deference, just as they did the rights of other property owners. Famed Supreme Court Justice Joseph Story repeatedly declared that patent rights were "sacred" and were the just reward for inventive ingenuity. As he noted

in *Lowell v. Lewis* (1817), "the proper duty of the court" is to ensure that "wrongdoers may not reap the fruits of the labor and genius of other men."

The relative uniformity and certainty of enforcement of patent rights by the courts also proved critical in encouraging capital to invest in commercializing those patent rights.

Contrasting the patent laws and policies of the United States and Britain, Supreme Court Justice Henry Baldwin went to some lengths in *Whitney v. Emmett* (1831) to show how English courts saw patents as a zero-sum trade-off between private rights and the public good. The explicit intention of U.S. patent law, however, was "to benefit the inventor, in the belief that maximizing individual welfare leads to maximum social welfare."

Nonetheless, U.S. intellectual property laws did try to strike a balance between the needs of the many and the few. "Patent laws ensured the security of private property rights in invention. However, it was also necessary to balance the just claims of inventors against the dangers of exclusive monopolies that might restrict the scope of current and future invention."[28]

Slide Show

Slide shows available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Whitney v. Emmett In *Whitney v. Emmett* (1831), Supreme Court Justice Henry Baldwin noted that the explicit intention of U.S. patent law was to "to benefit the inventor, in the belief that maximizing individual welfare leads to maximum social welfare."

Influential U.S. Patent Law Court Decisions

Changes in U.S. Patent Law Through the Years

Over the years, of course, that balance has moved back and forth between relatively stronger versus weaker enforcement of patent rights. With the rise of the robber barons in the late nineteenth century, government and the courts increasingly

viewed patents through the prism of antitrust, in some cases even compelling large firms like IBM to license their patents to competitors. Then with the advent of the high-tech revolution in the 1980s, antitrust concerns faded and the courts began once again to view stronger patent rights as helpful in fostering innovation.

Interestingly, the U.S. legal system has always operated on the theory that the best way to achieve the proper balance between private rights and public interest was not through government decree, centralized management, or compulsory licensing but rather through the decentralized decision making and market interactions of inventors themselves. The court's role was to resolve the inevitable conflicts that arose, on a case by case basis.

Throughout all the twists and turns in patent enforcement over the centuries, however, the federal courts have remained unwavering on four key principles of U.S. patent law.

Four Key Elements of Patent Law

1. Patent validity is determined by the novelty, non-obviousness, and utility of the invention and not the identity or business model of the inventor.
2. No patent holder is required to practice the patent or make products based on it.
3. Patents are freely transferable and tradable property rights.
4. Patent infringement is a strict liability tort—infringement need not be willful.

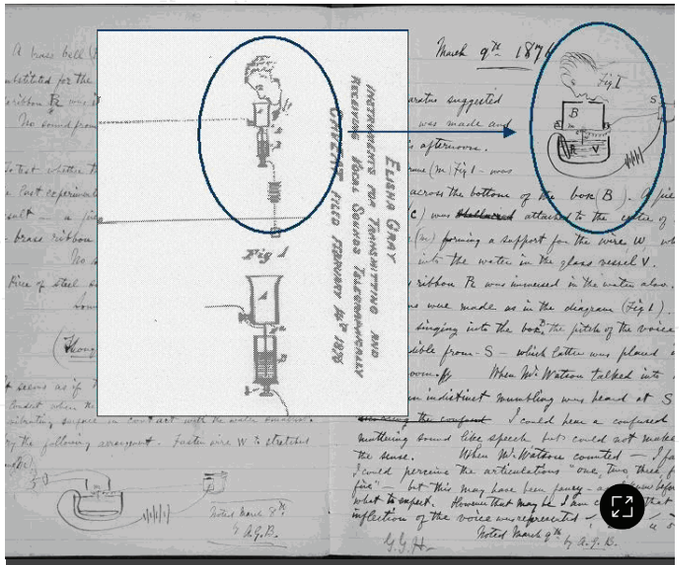
An "Explosion" of Patent Litigation?

Patent litigation, of course, has always been an integral feature of the U.S. patent system. The first patent case on record was that of Benjamin Folger, whose patent for the production of candles was invalidated by the district federal court for New York in 1792. This was merely the first of many hundreds (and eventually thousands) of cases in which patent litigation served the important function of settling

either the validity or the disputed ownership of the rights to critical new technologies—the litigation between telephone inventors Alexander Graham Bell and Elisha Gray being perhaps the most famous case in point. By doing so, the courts provided greater certainty regarding the value of such rights to entrepreneurs and investors alike.

Today, some critics contend that an "explosion of patent litigation" unlike any in history is harming business and diverting resources better spent on innovation. No responsible observer would deny that the courts have seen an increase in patent infringement suits in recent years, just as they have seen a rise in personal injury claims and product liability suits. But that said, the evidence shows that the rate of patent litigation today is actually below historical norms.

According to USCourts.gov figures, the number of patent infringement suits filed in the United States increased 59 percent between 2001 and 2011—from 2,520 cases in 2001 to 4,015 cases in 2011. Meanwhile, the number of patents granted in that same period increased by only 35 percent, which supports the view that patent litigation has become more frequent over the last decade as the role and value of intellectual property has increased in the Knowledge Economy.



A comparison of the illustration of the telephone in Alexander Graham Bell's diaries and Elisha Gray's patent application. Image used under public domain.

Statistics from USCourts.gov show an even sharper rise in the number of patent suits filed in 2012, to 5,189 cases. But analysts attribute most of this increase to the anti-joinder provisions of the Patent Act of 2011, which curtailed the practice of naming multiple defendants in a single infringement suit. According to Carla Rydholm of the patent analytics

firm Lex Machina, "Plaintiffs must [now] meet more stringent requirements to file a case against multiple defendants. So instead of Plaintiff X filing one case naming 20 defendants, Plaintiff X might file 20 lawsuits (one per defendant) each with unique civil action numbers."

When looked at over the longer term, however, it turns out that 96 percent of all the increase in patent infringement suits since 1991 can be explained by a corresponding increase in patents granted, reports the PricewaterhouseCoopers's 2013 Patent Litigation Study.[29]

In case you're wondering if the increase in patents granted is itself a sign of a patent system being increasingly gamed by speculators wanting to cash in on the new "patent gold rush," note that the average number of patents issued per billion dollars of GDP has remained at or below the same level—13 patents per billion dollars of GDP—since 1963.[30]

Interestingly, although the number of suits filed has increased in rough correlation to patent grants, the number that actually go to trial has remained fairly constant over the last 30 years. About 90 percent of the suits filed each year are abandoned or settled. Of the three hundred that remain, two-thirds never go to trial, and are adjudicated on summary judgment (of noninfringement in most cases).

The nation is thus left with, at most, between 90 and 112 patent infringement trials per year—exactly the same number that went to trial 10, 20, and even 30 years ago.[31]

To be sure, there can be significant costs to business even in litigating and settling patent suits that never go to trial. But no one has shown that the relative cost of patent litigation today is higher than it was historically, or that the cost of patent litigation is more burdensome than other customary legal costs in business, especially the huge cost of regulatory compliance.

The evidence does not suggest that patent litigation is "out of control" today. As retired Chief Judge Paul Michel of the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit, the main court for patent appeals since 1982, notes, "The level of patent litigation today is rather modest for a nation with two million active

patents and hundreds of thousands of businesses competing against each other."

History supports Judge Michel on this point. The estimated 124-plus smartphone patent suits filed between 2009 and 2012[32] are less than one-quarter the number of patent suits filed during the first "Telephone Wars" of Alexander Graham Bell's time. Back then, the American Bell Telephone Company and its successor, AT&T, litigated 587 patent cases alone.[33]

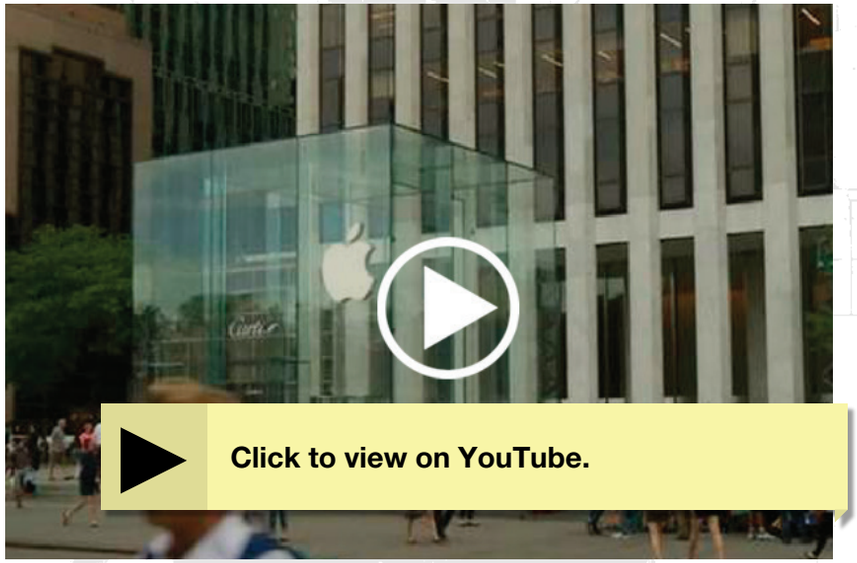
Even more surprising, given the common belief in a patent litigation "explosion" today, patent and legal records from the golden age of invention during the mid-nineteenth century U.S. Industrial Revolution show that the patent litigation rate at that time—defined as the number of patent suits filed in a decade divided by the number of patents issued in that decade—reached 3.6 percent.[34]

In contrast, USCourts.gov figures show the patent litigation rate during the decade 2001 to 2011 was less than half that—only 1.52 percent. From 2002 to 2012, reflecting the increased suits but also the increased (276,788) patents issued, the litigation rate was 1.57 percent.

Over the entire period from 1790 to 1860, the patent litigation rate averaged 1.65 percent.

Today's smartphone wars, then, are simply "back to the future" when it comes to the ways in which disruptive new industries are developed. Historians have noted that every major industrial breakthrough of the last 150 years—from the development of the sewing machine, telephone, automobile, radio, aircraft, medical stent, and even disposable diaper industries, to the birth of the semiconductor and Internet e-commerce industries—witnessed exactly the same surge in patenting and patent litigation that we see in today's smartphone field.[35]

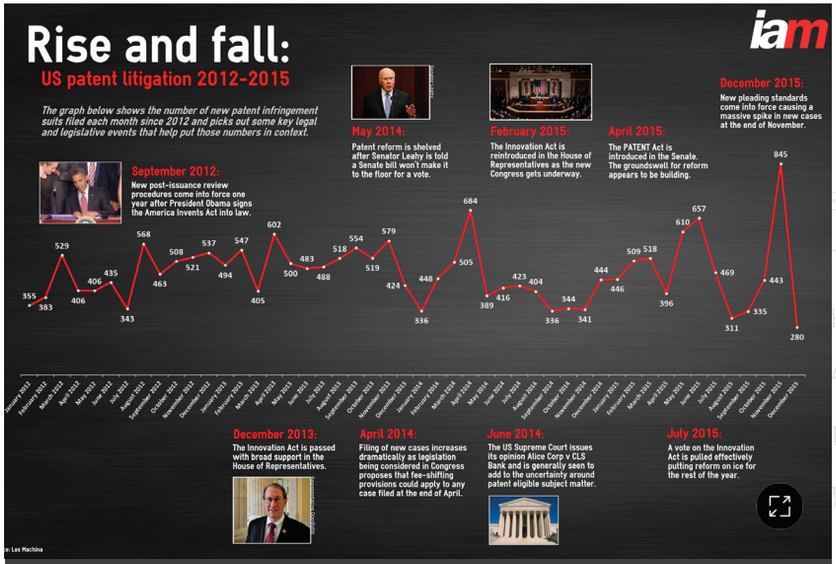
And just as with smartphones today, the most competitive technology arenas have always been the most litigious. In Edison's time, the inventors of electrical discoveries were four times more likely than other inventors to be involved in patent litigation, and accounted for 41 percent of all patent suits filed during that period.[36]



In any event, by early 2015, it had already become clear that a noticeable decline in patent litigation was under way. Most analysts attributed the decline to a series of U.S. Supreme Court rulings in 2014 limiting the patentability of software and increasing the ability of the courts to impose sanctions on abusive litigants, which will be discussed later in this chapter. Also driving this decline in litigation was the availability of new post-grant review proceedings under the new America Invents Act, which allow third parties to challenge patents and, if the evidence so warrants, have their claims invalidated by the USPTO's Patent Trial and Appeal Board.

Although patent litigation is costly, the historical record suggests that it serves a vital function by settling the validity and disputed ownership of patent rights so these can be commercialized into new products, new services, and new medical treatments.

This is, in fact, the proper role of the courts.



Source: IAM, the IP Division of Globe Business Media Group, London, UK (www.iam-media.com).

Check Your Understanding

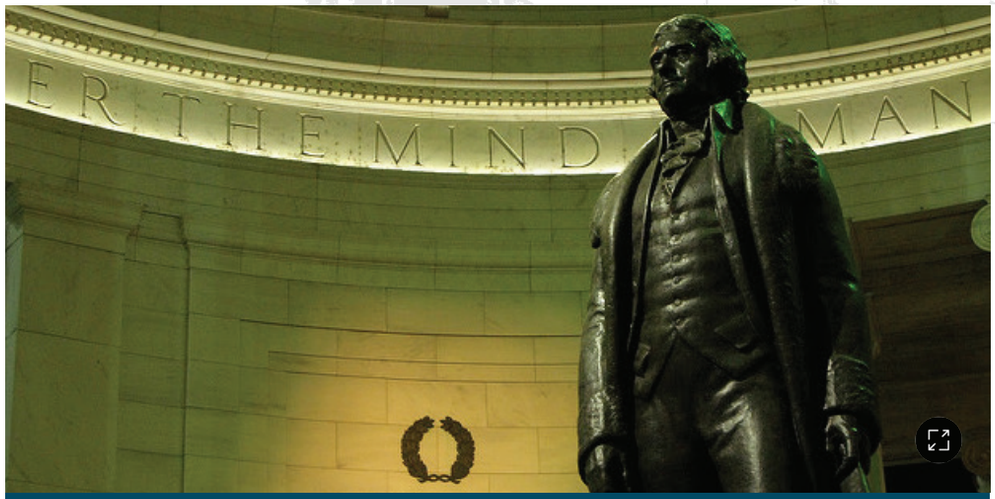
Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 3 | Section 1.4

Which of the following is NOT true of the U.S. patent system?

- ◯ Novelty, non-obviousness, and utility determine patent validity, not the identity or business model of the inventor.
- ◯ Patents are freely transferable and tradable property rights.
- ◯ You can't infringe a patent if you honestly don't know that it exists.
- ◯ Patent holders are not required to make or sell products based on their inventions.

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Section 1.5: What the U.S. Patent System Wrought



After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Explain the effects of the U.S. patent system on American economic development.
- Describe trends in U.S. patenting over the years.

Creating the World's Most Successful Economy

In 1630, the puritan John Winthrop, future governor of Massachusetts colony, declared that "We shall be as a city upon a hill, the eyes of all people are upon us."

One hundred and fifty years later, the Founders of the United States of America proved Winthrop right, offering the world a vision of liberty and democratic governance that continues to inspire people to this day. As noted previously, the men who led the Revolution and wrote the Constitution were not wild-eyed revolutionaries. They were eminently practical people who managed to create the longest-living modern democratic political and economic system on the planet.

In other words, they must have done something right. And one of those things was surely the patent system they created. Because almost from the moment of its inception, it began to spark innovation and economic growth on a scope and scale never before seen in the world.

Only two months after America's first patent law was signed in 1790, in fact, Thomas Jefferson himself noted that it had "given a spring to invention beyond my conception." Within 13 years, America surpassed Britain—until then, the unrivaled leader of the industrial revolution—in the number of new inventions patented, even though Britain still had more than twice America's population. By 1870, as noted earlier, the United States was patenting more than five times the number of inventions as Britain, although their populations were by then roughly equal in size.

At first, most British observers were dismissive of American innovation efforts, declaring that the former colony would never be able to progress beyond the simple imitation of superior European technologies. But eventually Britain and other nations took note of the way the U.S. patent system seemed to be stimulating invention and economic growth at an unheard-of pace.

Sir William Thompson, a British inventor and scientist attending the 1876 Centennial Exhibition in Philadelphia, looked at the amazing array of American inventions—including Bell's telephone, the Westinghouse airbrake, Singer's sewing machines, and Edison's improved telegraph—and had this to say: "If Europe does not amend its patent laws, America will speedily become the nursery of useful inventions for the world."[37]

Meanwhile, the Swiss Commissioner in attendance, the shoe manufacturer Edward Bally, offered a similar warning to his Old World countrymen: "American industry has taken a lead which in a few years may cause Europe to feel its consequences in a very marked degree."

Then, there's Japan's Assistant Secretary of State Korekiyo Takahashi, who visited the U.S. Patent Office. Upon his return home, he said, "What is it that makes the United States such a great nation? We investigated, and we found it was patents. And we will have patents."

Even the British jurist Sir Henry Sumner Maine, who had once argued that "the establishment of the masses in power is the blackest omen" for the

future of invention, later changed his tune. He conceded that the U.S. patent system was "one of the provisions of the Constitution that have most influenced the destinies of the American people" and that it had made the United States "the first in the world for the number and ingenuity of [its] inventors".[38]

As historians Lamoreaux and Sokoloff noted, "[Foreign] observers attributed much of the country's rapid technological progress to its distinctive patent system. Quite revolutionary in design at inception, the U.S. patent system came to be much admired for providing broad access to property rights in new technological knowledge and for facilitating trade in patented technologies. These features attracted the technologically creative, even those who lacked the capital to directly exploit [i.e., commercialize] their inventions . . . and also fostered a division of labor between the conduct of inventive activity and the application of technical discoveries to actual production. It is no coincidence that Britain and many other European countries [later] began to modify their patent institutions to make them more like those of the Americans."[39]

Slide Show

Slide shows available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Sir William Thomson (pictured above) stated that Europe needed to amend its patent laws if it did not wish to fall behind American inventions. Image used under public domain.

The World's Reaction to the U.S. Patent System

Britain Sir William Thomson, a British inventor, noted on a 1876 visit to Philadelphia that "If Europe does not amend its patent laws, America will speedily become the nursery of useful inventions for the world."

Every Breakthrough Spurs Patenting Spikes

The patent system's central role in fostering innovation can be seen in the patenting spikes that occur with every

major industrial breakthrough. A major surge in patenting took place in the 1880s, for example, when the number of new patents issued each year jumped 56 percent to about 20,000, compared with the 12,000 issued yearly during the previous decade. This patent boom corresponded with rapid advances in the emerging railroad, telegraph, telephone, and electric light and power industries that signaled the industrialization of the U.S. economy.

The next sharp surge in patent issuances began around 1902 and lasted until 1916 or so, when the number of patents granted doubled from 20,000 per year to around 40,000 per year. This was the period of the newborn automobile and aircraft industries' most rapid early-stage growth. Patenting levels then remained relatively stable at about 40,000 per year until around 1960 or so, when the revolution in plastics and other synthetic materials along with boom-time growth in the aerospace and computer industries pushed patenting levels to 60,000 per year. There they remained until the mid-1980s, when the personal computer and emerging high-tech industries of Silicon Valley began to power the whole of the U.S. economy and propel us toward the age of the Internet. Patenting levels then rose to around 80,000 to 100,000 yearly.

With the rise of the Internet, social media, mobile telephony, and smartphones over the last two decades, the number of patent applications filed each year with the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) has surged fourfold. In 2014, the USPTO received 578,802 applications, finding 300,678 of

Slide Show

Slide shows available in free iBooks version, click to download.

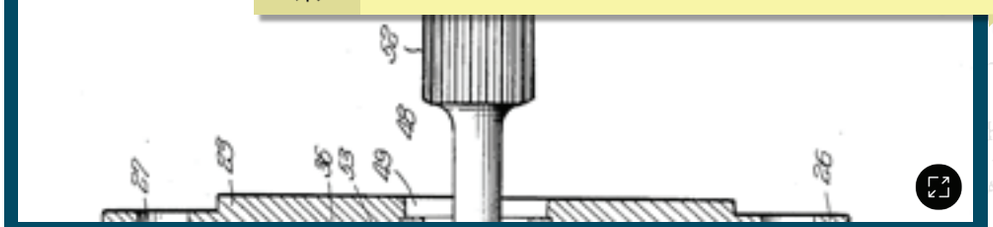


Image of axial piston pump from 1960 patent application. Axial piston pumps can be used as air conditioning compressors in cars. Image used under public domain.

1960s The 1960s saw another patent issuance boom with advancements in plastics, synthetic materials, computer technologies, and aerospace industries.

these applications worthy of receiving a patent. This is but the latest spike in innovation and patenting.

Clearly, whenever the United States has undergone a major industrial renaissance during which technology advances lead not only to the birth of new industries, but also to the reshaping of existing ones, patenting levels rise dramatically. It is no surprise, therefore, that Silicon Valley, midwife of many of the new Knowledge Economy industries of the past 60 years, is home to less than 1 percent of the nation's population but earns 12 percent of its patents each year. The Valley is now the site of a new USPTO satellite office serving high-tech innovators there.[40]

The patent system has also been crucial in facilitating the growth of new start-up businesses, with 67 percent of entrepreneurs reporting that they find patents valuable in obtaining venture financing.[41] This is important because although large companies contribute enormously to American innovation and industrial growth through their in-house research and development operations as well as via their partnerships with research universities, start-up companies play a particularly strong role in the creation of entirely new industries. Indeed, virtually every innovative new industry of the last 150 years—

Silicon Valley is home to 12 percent of U.S. patents each year. Image used under CC BY 2.0.

from the telegraph, telephone, and electric power industries of the 1800s, to the auto, aircraft, materials, and aerospace industries of the twentieth century, to the semiconductor, personal computer, software, biotech and Internet e-commerce industries of the last 60 years—was launched by an entrepreneurial start-up company.

The Founders would not be surprised by this. They created the world's first democratized patent system, after all, for a reason: to stimulate the ingenuity of the common man. They had asked themselves a question—the same question reiterated two generations later by Supreme Court Justice Joseph Story when he spoke before an audience of ordinary mechanics: "Ask yourselves, what would be the result of one hundred thousand minds … urged on by the daily motives of interest, to acquire new skill, or invent new improvements."[42]

The result was the most successful economy on the face of the earth.

Patents and the American Dream

It's not only the economy that the patent system helped shape, but the culture and consciousness as well. As the eminent historian Gordon S. Wood observed in his 2010 book *Empire of Liberty*,

> "By the early nineteenth century, technology and prosperity were assuming for Americans the same sublime and moral significance that the enlightenment had reserved for the classical state and the Newtonian universe. Eli Whitney, inventor of the cotton gin, and Robert Fulton, creator of the steamboat, became national heroes."

And for the first time in human history, a nation had come to see its greatness not in empire or military might or royal lineage, but in its capacity for technological progress.

There was nothing preordained about America's economic success, no special "Yankee ingenuity" gene in their hereditary stock. As *Scientific American* noted in 1876, the United States advanced "not because we are by nature more inventive than other men. Every nationality becomes inventive the moment it comes under our laws."

Rather, the secret of America's success was a uniquely democratic patent system that "added the fuel of interest to the fire of genius" in generations of ordinary

citizens—and in so doing, helped in a very real way to give birth to the American Dream itself.

Ironically, few people today even know the origin of the term "the American Dream." In fact, it was coined in 1931, by the historian James Truslow Adams in his book *Epic of America*, and it is instructive to read what Adams meant by it:

> "The American Dream, that has lured tens of millions of all nations to our shores in the past century, has not been a dream merely of material plenty, though that has doubtless counted heavily. It has been much more than that. It has been a dream of being able to grow to fullest development as a man and woman, unhampered by the barriers which had slowly been erected in the older civilizations, unrepressed by social orders which had developed for the benefit of classes rather than for the simple human being of any and every class."

Only in America could a working class youth named Thomas Edison with less than three years of schooling develop himself into the world's greatest inventor—a visionary who gave the world some of the most important technologies of late nineteenth- and early twentieth-century life.

This is exactly what the Founders had in mind when they created the U.S. patent system.

Check Your Understanding

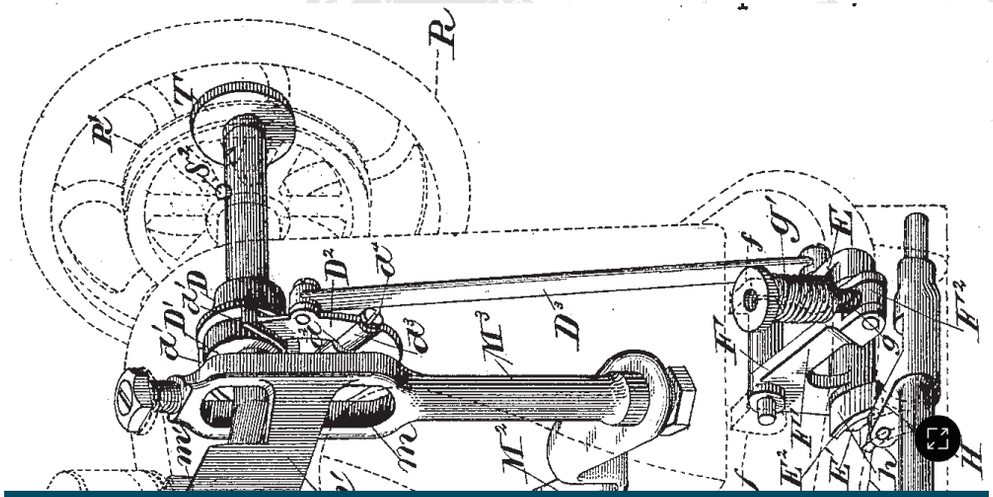
Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 4 | Section 1.5

How many years after the first patent law was signed in 1790 did it take for the United States to surpass Britain in the number of new inventions being patented?

- ◯ 75 years
- ◯ 40 years
- ◯ 13 years
- ◯ 100 years

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Section 1.6: Patent-Eligible Inventions



After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Identify the characteristics of a patentable invention.
- Understand what is not patentable and why.

What, Exactly, Can You Patent?

Title 35 of the United States Code (the Patent Act) allows anyone who invents or discovers any new, non-obvious, and useful machine, manufacture, process, or composition of matter—or who makes an improvement of any of the above—to obtain a patent.[43]

These four kinds of patentable inventions fall into one of two categories: They are products or processes.[44]

Product or Process?

Products are physical things—whether they be machines (a new type of robotic welder), manufactures (an artificial knee made of titanium), or compositions of matter (a new chemical "superglue" for binding materials together). In this photo, Elon Musk observes the robotic arms in the Tesla Motors factory. Specialized manufacturing equipment like this are patentable products.

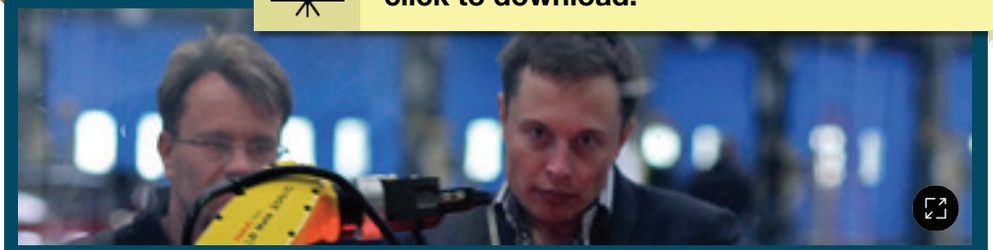
Processes (or methods), on the other hand, are a means to an end—either a means of doing something new (being able to pay for purchases directly from your smartphone), or a new way of doing

something old (using "pinch, swipe, and zoom" gestures on a touchscreen, rather than clicking drop-down menus, to manipulate text, music, and images on a smartphone).

Product or Process?

Slide Show

Slide shows available in free iBooks version, click to download.



Products are physical things, which includes machines, manufactures, and compositions of matter. In this photo, Elon Musk observes the robotic arms, which are patentable, in the Tesla Motors factory. Image used under CC BY 2.0.

Products vs. Processes.
Products

You Cannot Patent Ideas

All patented inventions fit into one of these four categories: machine, manufacture, process, or composition of matter. But not everything that fits in one of these four categories can be patented. And the most important reason why one thing is patentable and another is not lies in the difference between ideas and applications.

You cannot patent an idea for a better mousetrap—not unless it can be developed into a new, non-obvious, and useful machine, manufacture, process, or composition of matter that can actually accomplish the task. You may have a genius idea for faster-than-light travel, but that will not get you a patent unless you can outline how to develop a tangible process or device for actually doing so, in which case you can seek to patent it.

Put another way, "talk is cheap" when it comes to securing a patent. The U.S. Patent and Trademark Office offers no judgment as to the wisdom or desirability of any particular invention—patent No. 2,882,858 for a bird diaper is certainly proof of that. But it absolutely will insist

that every invention include a tangible device or process for achieving its intended purpose before it deems the invention worthy of a patent.

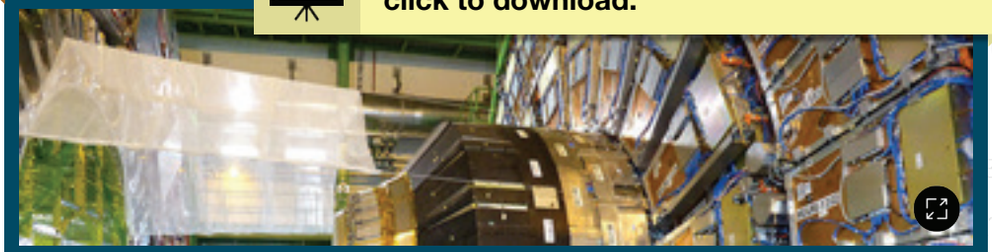
Mathematical Formulas Not Patentable

There are other discoveries that fall into the broad category of abstract ideas and are thus unpatentable. You cannot patent a mathematical formula. You cannot patent a law of nature, such as Einstein's $E=MC^2$. And you cannot patent natural phenomena like electricity (discovered by William Gilbert in 1600) or the Higgs particle that gives all matter its mass (discovered by researchers at the Large Hadron Collider on July 4, 2012). These all exist independently of human intervention, whether we have discovered them or formulated their rules yet or not, and must be freely available to all of humanity for its understanding and betterment.

To restate the distinction, you cannot patent electromagnetism but you can patent a telegraph that uses electromagnetism to communicate rapidly over great distances, as Samuel Morse did in 1840 with patent no. 1647. And although you cannot patent light waves, you can patent a fiber optic wire that employs light waves to communicate even more rapidly and over greater distances, as Corning Glass researchers did in 1970 with patent no. 3,711,262.

Slide Show

Slide shows available in free iBooks version, click to download.



This is the large Hadron Collider in Cern, Switzerland. Could you patent the Higgs particle that gives all matter its mass, discovered by researchers at the Large Hadron Collider on July 4, 2012? No, you can't. The particle, and electricity, all exist independently of human intervention, whether we have discovered them or formulated their rules yet or not, and must be freely available to all of humanity for its understanding and betterment. Image used under CC BY 2.0.

Can You Patent Natural Phenomena?

Can You Patent Computer Software?

The boundary between ideas and applications might seem clear, but it has become blurred since the advent of computer technology 40 years ago, especially regarding the patentability of software.

To learn more, watch the video below, from PBS Digital Studios, about the first software patent ever awarded and to learn a bit about the debate around software patentability.

Mixed Verdicts on Software Patentability

The federal courts and the U.S. Supreme Court have tried to clarify the limits of patentability in the computer age. Three Supreme Court cases in particular—often called the "patent-eligibility trilogy"—reveal the evolution of its thinking about software patentability.

In 1972, the Supreme Court held in *Gottschalk v. Benson* that an algorithm in a computer program—in this case, a mathematical procedure executed electronically that was similar to long division with paper and pencil—was in and of itself not patentable. Phenomena of nature, mental processes, and abstract intellectual concepts are the basic tools of scientific and technical research, the court noted, and therefore could not be patented lest it foreclose others from using the algorithm and thereby stifle rather than

promote technological progress. Granting a patent in this case, the court said, would be analogous to having granted Samuel Morse a patent covering all possible uses of electromagnetism in communications, rather than for the specific method and apparatus he actually invented.

The court made a point of saying, however, that its decision did not mean that computer software could not be patented—only that software whose only useful characteristic was an abstract algorithm could not be patented.

The Supreme Court further refined its thinking on software patentability in the 1978 case *Parker v. Flook*. Unlike the attempt to patent all uses of an algorithm in the *Benson* case, here the use of a software algorithm was limited to a specific application — setting off an alarm during the catalytic chemical conversion of hydrocarbons. This was a specific and tangible use of an algorithm, but the Court still ruled the software unpatentable because it felt the application itself was not inventive.

But once again, the Court left the door open: "Even though a phenomenon of nature or mathematical formula may be well known, an inventive application … may be patented."

Three years later, the Supreme Court made its third attempt to define the patent-eligibility of software. In *Diamond v. Diehr*, the Court ruled that although algorithms by themselves are not patentable, a software program that used algorithms to govern the molding of raw synthetic rubber into cured precision products was in fact patentable because it involved "transforming or reducing an article to a different state or thing."

Slide Show

Slide shows available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Gottschalk v. Benson In *Gottschalk v. Benson*, the Supreme Court stated that an algorithm in a computer program was not patentable, neither could phenomena of nature, mental processes, or abstract intellectual concepts.

The Patent-Eligibility Trilogy

The Software Picture Blurs Even More

Taken together, the three rulings appeared for a time to arrive finally at a coherent definition of software patentability—namely, that although algorithms by themselves are abstract concepts and therefore unpatentable, software programs may be patented if they employ algorithms to produce a tangible and inventive or transformative result. This view was further augmented by a 1998 U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit decision in *State Street Bank v. Signature Financial Group*, which extended software patentability to software-enabled methods of doing business so long as these produced a "useful, concrete, and tangible result."

But this definitional equilibrium was not to last. The "useful, concrete, and tangible result" test in *State Street Bank* was rejected ten years later by the same court in *In re Bilski*, which upheld the USPTO's denial of a patent for a method of hedging risk in commodities trading. The court instead offered a "machine or transformation" test, which allows a software program or business method to be patented only if it is implemented on a specific machine to achieve a special purpose that is novel, non-obvious, and useful; it transforms an article from one thing or state to another.

But in its review of *Bilski v. Kappos,* the Supreme Court ruled that while the "machine or transformation" test was useful, it was not the only test for patentability. In addition to the "machine or transformation" test, the court decreed (rather vaguely) that any future test should be "grounded in the examples and concepts" expressed in its original "patent-eligibility trilogy" of opinions. They thus reaffirmed that business methods may indeed be patentable.

Finally, a "Pretty Clear" Message

> *"You can't take a commonplace human activity, do it with a computer, and call that a patentable invention."*
>
> -Timothy B. Lee

While businesses and the courts were trying to figure out what the other tests for patentability might be, the Supreme Court provided further input with its March 2012 decision in *Mayo Collaborative Services v. Prometheus Laboratories*. Here, the court ruled that a process enabling physicians to correlate blood test results with medication levels to achieve the most appropriate dosages was ineligible for patent protection."

But then in June of 2014, The Supreme Court issued what may prove to be its most consequential decision on the patentability of software in the 33 years since *Diamond v. Diehr.* In *Alice v. CLS Bank,* the Court ruled that taking some activity that people have been doing for centuries — in this case, holding funds in escrow until a transaction is completed — and then merely "doing it through a computer" did not turn this age-old activity into a patentable new invention.

At first, many observers believed that the effects of the *Alice v. CLS Bank* ruling would be very limited. Only the patent in the suit was invalidated, after all, not all software patents. What's more, the abstract reasoning of the court in its decision did not provide clarity on how the ruling may or may not apply to other kinds of software patents — for example, the sort of software used in manufacturing that was ruled patentable in the 1981 *Diamond v. Diehr* case.

> *"The courts are sending a pretty clear message: you can't take a commonplace human activity, do it with a computer, and call that a patentable invention."*
>
> -Timothy B. Lee

But by October of 2014, a series of lower court decisions applying the new *Alice v. CLS Bank* standard had invalidated 13 additional software patents. As technology policy journalist Timothy B. Lee noted, "The courts are sending a pretty clear message: you can't take a commonplace human activity, do it with a computer, and call that a patentable invention."

How far reaching will the impact of *Alice v. CLS Bank* be? "This doesn't necessarily mean that all software patents are in danger," Lee noted, because the patents involved "were

particularly vulnerable to challenge under the new *Alice* precedent. But it does mean that the pendulum of patent law is clearly swinging in an anti-[software] patent direction."

Overcoming the *Alice* Paradox

By late 2015, however, it was clear that the *Alice* ruling was having an impact not only on patent law, but also on the innovation process itself within corporate America.

As John Cronin, a former top inventor at IBM and now the CEO of the innovation-on-demand firm ipCreate, observes: "The highest-value products and services today—the ones that increasingly drive margins in business—involve cloud computing, Big Data, machine learning, connectivity, mobility and location-based services, and on-demand and anything-as-a-service software applications and business processes. But ironically, these high-value innovations are also the most difficult to patent nowadays as a result of the Supreme Court's *Alice* decision."

Cronin calls this the "*Alice* Paradox," and it has left many in-house patent groups struggling for a solution. One thing is clear: To be patentable nowadays, software has to take a genuinely-inventive step and either trigger an action, employ a device, or in some other way produce a tangible transformative result.

In addition, smart companies are trying to address patentability issues involving software and business processes much earlier in the innovation cycle, before huge investments are made in R&D that may turn out to be not patentable.

Overall, addressing the "*Alice* Paradox" will be critical for many companies because patenting clearly adds value to a new product or service. In a groundbreaking joint study from Carnegie Mellon University, Georgia Institute of Technology, and Duke University entitled "R&D and the Patent Premium," economists found that "the patent premium for innovations that were patented is substantial. Firms earn on average a 50% premium over the no patenting case, ranging from 60% in the health-related industries to 40% in electronics."[45]

The Debate on Software Continues

The debate over the dividing line between patentable versus unpatentable computer software-related inventions continues—in corporate R&D labs and in the courts.

However, there are some who don't believe that software and business methods should be patented under any conditions. They argue first of all that software is different from other industries—more iterative and more incremental, with each advance building upon thousands of previous advances. Therefore, their thinking goes, software should not be entitled to patents that ought to be more properly reserved for truly breakthrough or revolutionary inventions.

There are two problems with this argument. First, as anyone in the semiconductor, chemical, or medical device industries can attest, innovation is no more iterative, incremental, or cumulative in software than is innovation in many other industries. Indeed, there are probably just as many or more patents for incremental semiconductor inventions that build modestly upon earlier work as there are patents for incremental software inventions that do the same.

As patent scholar and veteran practitioner Paul Janicke of the University of Houston put it, "There really are no breakthrough inventions—at least not in the sense imagined by these critics. Everything moves one step at a time. In fact, every time I thought I encountered a large leap, it turned out that I didn't know the full extent of the prior art."

Slide Show

Slide shows available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Apple's computer mouse designs have changed over the years. On the left, the 1984 mouse is clunky and wired to the computer, while the Apple Magic Mouse on the right is much sleeker and wireless. Image used under CC BY 2.0, via flickr.

The second problem with their logic is that the Founding Fathers specifically designed the patent system to encourage precisely this kind of incremental invention, so that ordinary people—using only the basic technical skills possessed by most citizens—could participate in rapidly developing the economy from the ground up. This was a very different approach than that of elitist European patent systems of the day, and it produced results that the rest of the world very soon came to envy (see "Section 1.5: What the U.S. Patent System Wrought").

As the October 21, 1876, issue of *Scientific American* noted, "In the aggregate the little things—which in England or the continent would not or could not be patented—probably add more to the wealth and wellbeing of the community … than the great things do." Or to quote Thomas Jefferson himself: "A smaller [invention], applicable to our daily concerns, is infinitely more valuable than the greatest which can only be used for great objects."[46] Any uncertainty over the validity of incremental patenting was removed once and for all by the Patent Act of 1952. Consistent with the Founders' intentions, U.S. law now explicitly holds that patent eligibility is not restricted solely to revolutionary inventions or "flash of genius" discoveries, but also includes more iterative advances in the state of the technological art so long as these meet the requisite novelty, non-obviousness, and utility criteria.

Evidence Shows Software Patents Don't Hinder Innovation

Another argument made by critics of software patenting is that patents stifle innovation and foster monopolization in the software industry. Research, however, suggests that this is decidedly not the case.[47] If anything, in fact, the software industry has become even more innovative, more diversified, and more start-up friendly since patenting became common in the 1990s. You need

only look at the huge proliferation of highly innovative start-ups in today's social media and apps software fields to see just how erroneous the claim is that software patents stifle innovation. Or consider for a moment the fate of the Blackberry, once dominant but within the space of a couple of years superseded by more innovative competing smartphone makers.

Finally, some critics insist that the intangible nature of software ought to disqualify it from patentability. But as noted earlier, the Supreme Court has affirmed repeatedly that although abstract concepts cannot be patented, software that employs algorithms to produce a tangible and inventive result — e.g., software that governs the molding of raw synthetic rubber into cured precision products — may be patented.

It's also helpful to view this issue in a larger context. Forty years ago, 80 percent of the market value of all public companies resided in their tangible physical assets—their plant, equipment, and raw materials. In today's Knowledge Economy, however, it is intangible assets—intellectual property—that make up 80 percent of the market value of public companies.[48]

Among the first companies to offer mobile email access, Blackberry's failure to innovate further is often blamed for their drastic decline. Image used under public domain.

Indeed, the entire history of economic progress on our planet may be described as one long climb by humanity up the ladder of abstraction—from brute force to the subtle use of energy, from wealth derived from tangible resources and industrial machinery to wealth derived from ever-more ingenious ways to

deploy that energy and those resources. It seems only logical, therefore, to expect that invention itself should follow a similar trajectory—from the realm of the tangible to the realm of the intangible.

Ironically, the debate over patents for software, business methods, and other intangible inventions is nowhere more heated than on the Internet, itself an intangible realm in which "virtual" businesses launched with little more than hope and electrons (e.g., Facebook) are creating real and substantial wealth in the form of new products, new services, new jobs, and new economic growth for society. Yet strangely, those who have no trouble accepting the Internet as the intangible fruit of information age invention seem to get stuck in industrial age conceptions of what should and should not be patentable.

Odd perhaps, but not surprising. The expansion of patentable subject matter into new and more intangible realms has always met with resistance. Patents involving the use of electricity were condemned 140 years ago, as were biotechnology patents 30 years ago, and of course software patents when they began to appear in large numbers 20 years ago. In each case, critics warned that these new kinds of patents would hold back further scientific discovery and innovation. Yet in each case, innovation and discovery actually intensified and their benefits to society multiplied.

When Gene-Related Inventions Are Patentable

A similar resistance is also developing toward gene-related patents. These began to be issued in significant numbers after the Supreme Court's 1980 ruling in *Diamond v. Chakrabarty,* which upheld the first patent on a newly-created living organism — a bacterium for digesting crude oil in oil spills. Since then, patents have been granted for isolated gene sequences, but so far only on those with known functions and not on naturally-occurring genes in humans or other organisms. Patents have also been granted for gene sequences

used in diagnostic testing, and on gene sequences that have been altered to make them more useful in a specific application.

In March of 2010, however, a federal district court judge ruled in the case of *Myriad Genetics* that even isolated DNA is fundamentally the same as naturally-occurring DNA and is therefore ineligible for patenting. His ruling was reversed by the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit in July, 2011. But the Supreme Court then set aside that decision and directed the appeals court to once again review the case in light of its March, 2012 *Prometheus* decision. On August 16, 2012, however, the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit once again reaffirmed Myriad's right to patent the isolated genes BCRA1 and BCRA2, which are involved in most inherited forms of breast and ovarian cancer.

On June 13, 2013, however, the U.S. Supreme Court finally determined in a unanimous decision that a naturally occurring DNA segment is a product of nature and cannot be patented merely because it has been isolated, thereby invalidating Myriad's patents on the BRCA1 and BRCA2 genes. The Court did rule, however, that the manipulation of a gene to create something not found in nature — such as a strand of synthetically-produced complementary DNA (cDNA) — could still be eligible for patent protection.

To the average citizen—and perhaps to many patent lawyers as well—all this legal hairsplitting over the limits of patentability in the computer age must seem a bit like the

Slide Show

Slide shows available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Association for Molecular Pathology v. Myriad Genetics
Again, the Court made a ruling on DNA sequences, this time in *Association for Molecular Pathology v. Myriad Genetics*. The Court decided that a naturally occurring DNA segment could not be patented, but manipulating a gene to create something not found in nature could be patented.

The Patent-Eligibility Trilogy

debates in medieval times over how many angels can dance on the head of a pin. But two critical points must be borne in mind regarding these debates.

First, no matter what anyone thinks the limits of patentability in an ideal world ought to be, out in the real world where we actually live, software, business method, and gene patents are multi-billion-dollar facts of life that businesses ignore only at their peril.

Second, whatever confusion may exist today, the debates over patentability in the computer age will almost certainly be resolved eventually to most people's satisfaction, just as all previous debates over patentability have. For if nothing else, the two hundred year-plus history of the courts and the patent office demonstrate a remarkable ability on the part of these institutions to adapt to the challenges posed by new technologies and new economic conditions.

Check Your Understanding

Drag & Drop | Question 1 of 10 | Section 1.6

A patentable invention is a new, novel, and non-obvious machine, manufacture, process, or composition of matter. Which of the four types of inventions categories do these hypothetical mousetrap inventions represent?

A mouse ray gun

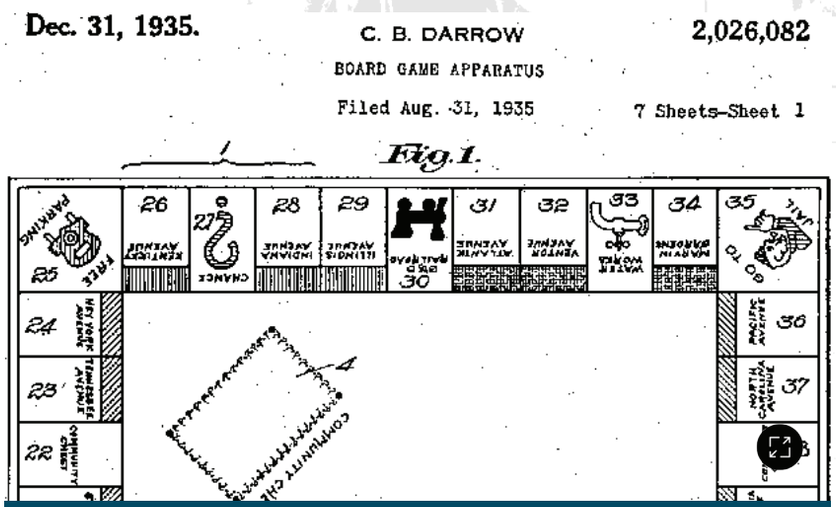
Exploding mouse glue

A new way to catch mice using sound waves

A mouse-destroying missile

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Section 1.7: Criteria for Patenting



After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Identify the criteria that an invention must meet to earn a patent.
- Understand why non-obviousness is the most difficult hurdle to overcome.

Can I Patent That?

Before reading this section, please watch this overview video covering what you can and cannot patent. You can't patent an idea (like an idea for a better mousetrap), only an application of that idea in a practical invention. Novelty, utility, and non-obviousness — the holy trinity of patents.

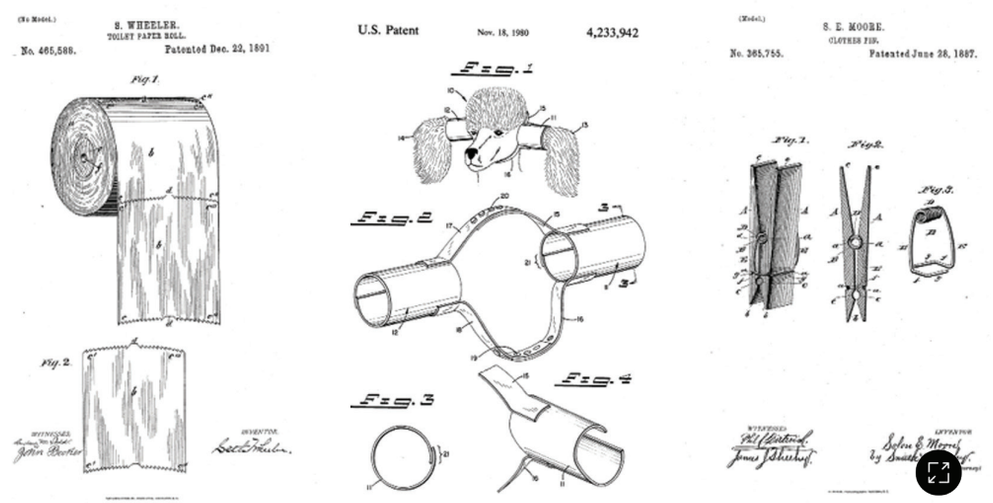
Now that you've learned what can be patented and what cannot, we will next examine the criteria for determining if a patent-eligible invention actually merits one. These criteria center around three concepts mentioned in the previous section and

enumerated in the Patent Act: novelty, utility, and non-obviousness.[49]

Let's discuss these three concepts in greater detail.

Novelty

The requirement in Sections 101 and 102 of the Patent Act for **novelty** in an invention means that to qualify for a patent, a machine, manufacture, process, or composition of matter must not have been previously described or known. Specifically, it must not have been patented, described in an unpublished or published patent application, explained in a printed publication such as an article or technical paper, or publicly known prior to the filing date of the new patent application. In addition, it must not have been published, used in public, or offered for sale by the applicant or his colleagues more than 12 months prior to the filing of a patent application.



Before you learn more about these three concepts, take a look at the patented items below. Recognize any? Do they all have "utility"? Images used under public domain (left, center, right).

If any of the above is true of an invention, it is said to have been "anticipated" and cannot be patented. These novelty requirements exist whether the "prior art"—the catchall term for any previous patent, publication, or use—is domestic or foreign.

This does not mean, of course, that your faster-than-light warp drive is unpatentable simply because it was envisioned in a general way in episodes

Thankfully, a hoverboard is still patentable. CC BY 2.0.

of *Star Trek* and its successors' television shows, and in many *Star Trek* books.

"It is not enough that an invention be suggested by the literature," explains the eminent New York University scholar Arthur R. Miller and his coauthor Michael H. Davis' in their textbook for law students.[50] "Nor is it sufficient that the literature made the invention inevitable—that bears on the question of non-obviousness. The test, with one major exception, is whether enough of the invention has been disclosed to enable a person skilled in the applicable art to duplicate the product or process."

That one exception, writes Miller and Davis, is public use of the invention. In that case, even a limited disclosure that does not reveal the secrets of the invention can still foreclose a patent if the public use of it "discloses the invention's benefits."

Prior Art Must Be Enabling

In the era of social media, the previously mentioned requirements could pose a novelty barrier if not handled properly.

For instance, if you develop a new watch that displays information from an iPhone, and then disclose it on the crowdsourced funding site Kickstarter in order to raise capital from thousands of small-time investors, then you will probably want to file a patent application prior to, or certainly no later than a year after, your disclosure of the benefits of your watch to the public.

But in the absence of such public use, disclosure in prior art must be substantial and enabling to be disqualifying.

As patent attorney and writer of the widely read *IP Watchdog* blog Gene Quinn explains:

> "What *Star Trek* teaches is the idea of warp speed with some suggested articulation of how it could be achieved. But that's not informing enough. Someone could not make and use the device based on what is taught in *Star Trek*. So if you actually figure out how to make a faster-than-light warp drive work—and can describe it sufficiently so that someone skilled in the science of space propulsion could build it—then yes, it would be patentable."

Take heart, *Star Trek* fans!

Utility

As the *Star Trek* example suggests, the novelty issue can also touch on the question of utility—the second patentability criteria. Utility has a special meaning in patent law, which is simply that an invention must function and be of some benefit qualitatively—although no minimum quantum of benefit is necessary. The landscape of business is littered with companies that have invented not very useful or necessary products. But these may satisfy the requirement for utility if at least someone would find them useful.

But snake oil medicines and other products that do not work in any meaningful way will not meet the requirement for utility. "The inventor of an ineffective drug may not obtain a patent merely because he convinces gullible patients that it has a non-existent curative effect," Miller and Davis note. "It is not so much that it lacks a minimum quantum of benefit (the patients may find it subjectively useful), but it is, instead, that it has an impermissible fraudulent quality."

Even when no fraud is intended, the utility of a product or process must be demonstrated

Image used under public domain.

in a patent application—not presumed, but affirmatively demonstrated. Simply put, the thing or the method you have invented must actually work as it is intended and claimed to work.

"Forget *Star Trek* for a moment," says Quinn. "On a more mundane level, the USPTO used to deny patents for methods and compositions for re-growing hair. These were seen as lacking utility because re-growing hair was believed to be impossible. Finally, someone was able to prove that his method and composition actually re-grew hair on a bald scalp. The patent examiners withdrew their rejection, and patents for such products have issued ever since."

Interestingly, Quinn explains, since the earlier patent applications on hair-growing products didn't describe anything that actually worked, they could not be used under the novelty bar to block later patent applications for hair-growing products that did work.

Non-Obviousness

An invention may be new. It may also have utility. But to meet the criteria for a patent, it must also be **non-obvious** under Section 103 of the Patent Act.

Let's now dig deeper into the requirements of the concept of non-obviousness.

Requirements

The requirement for non-obviousness may be illustrated with a fanciful example. If the number 4 were an invented product rather than a mathematical symbol, then even though the number 4 had never been invented before and was thus novel, it would still not be patentable. That's because someone skilled in the art could have put 2 and 2 together to come up with it.

But to offer a more practical example, say you invent a wheeled cart to move office supplies more easily between departments. If this is the first such wheeled office cart in history, you can get a patent for it. But if you then decide, "Hey, why

not put those wheels on a chair?" you won't get a patent for it. That's because combining two such widely-known and available elements would be obvious to anyone skilled in the art of office furniture design.

But things are not so obvious when it comes to inventing a camera phone. Even though it's composed of well-known and widely-available components, combining the two did satisfy the requirement for non-obviousness because it became more than the sum of its parts and met a large and previously-unfilled need in the marketplace. The millions of people who take selfies everyday is certainly proof of that.

There are various ways of presenting evidence that your invention satisfies the non-obvious requirement for patentability. You can demonstrate that the existing elements of your invention, although individually already known, yield an unexpected or hidden result. Or you can show that your invention, although composed of well-known and widely available components, when combined satisfies a long-felt but previously unfilled need in the marketplace, thus indicating its non-obviousness. Both of these demonstrations of non-obviousness apply to the camera phone example above.

The One-Click Patent

Some people criticized the so-called "one-click" patent granted by the USPTO to Amazon.com in 1999 for Amazon's system enabling customers to buy an item with a single click of the mouse—with the payment information needed to complete the purchase already having been entered by the user previously.

They contended that although Amazon might have been the first company to employ the process, it was an obvious and inevitable iteration of already-existing mouse-clicking procedures for making a purchase online. The patent office reexamined the patent, however, and in 2007 upheld the validity and the bulk of its major claims.

It is important to note that it's an invention's function that is often examined to determine obviousness. "Even though it may be obvious that a

certain object can be constructed in a certain way, its utility and novelty may lie in its functional use, not its construction," write Miller and Davis. "Therefore, the prior art must be used to determine whether the invention's new and useful function, not its construction, is non-obvious."

During the first half of the twentieth century, the courts often saw an invention as obvious when it lacked a "flash of genius" and was merely an incremental advance over the state of the art as opposed to what they imagined would be a "revolutionary" breakthrough discovery. But that subjective interpretation of inventiveness was overturned by the 1952 Patent Act, which codified a more objective standard—namely, that whether an invention is developed through laborious trial and error or through a eureka flash-of-genius moment has no bearing on its obviousness or non-obviousness.

Overcoming Patent Hurdles

Taken together, the three patenting criteria—novelty, utility, and non-obviousness—function like the obstacles in an Olympic hurdles race. The utility hurdle is easiest to overcome. The novelty hurdle less so. But by far, the highest hurdle facing inventors is non-obviousness.

"The vast majority of all rejections at the patent office are for obviousness reasons," explains retired Chief Judge Paul Michel of the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit, the main court that handles patent appeals. "And it's not very difficult to see why. Given the millions of patented inventions over the decades, the tens of millions of past and current products on the market, it's not all that easy to come up with an invention that is not only novel but also truly non-obvious to someone with ordinary skill in the state of the art."

Many believe that the criteria for patenting weakened in the late 1990s and early 2000s, and that as a result, too many poor-quality patents were issued. To the extent this problem exists, one of its likeliest causes is the fivefold increase in patent applications that has taken place over the last 30 years without a commensurate

increase in USPTO funding, resources, and capabilities.

Despite these challenges, the USPTO has made substantial progress in the last five years in improving examiner training and tools, reducing the backlog of pending applications, and strengthening the quality of the examination process for patent applications. This progress has been made despite oftentimes-unclear or contradictory patentability rulings from the courts.

Patent quality is essential to the maintenance of public confidence in the patent system. After all, when property rights (either real or intellectual) are seen as overbroad, ill-defined, or illegitimate, individuals and businesses are more willing to trespass on them.

Check Your Understanding

Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 6 | Section 1.7

Which of the following is NOT a requirement for patent eligibility?

- ◯ Novel
- ◯ Revolutionary
- ◯ Non-obvious
- ◯ Useful

BACK

NEXT

Section 1.8: Other Types of Patents

After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Explain the differences among utility, plant, and design patents.
- Describe common patent misconceptions.

Up to this point, we have focused only on the most common types of patents, called **utility patents**, which preclude others from making, using, or selling the invention during the term of the patent, which begins on the grant date and ends 20 years from the filing date (for an average of 17 to 18 years). But in addition to these, the Patent Act also provides for two other types of patents—**plant patents** and **design patents**.

Plant Patents

Plant patents were first created by the Patent Act of 1930, which had been proposed by Luther Burbank to protect new species of asexually reproduced plants, mostly flowers. These are different than the utility patents granted to bioengineered plants used in agriculture. The United States was the first country in the world to grant plant patents, and even today many countries continue to deny protection for plants. Indeed, even some signatories to the Agreement on Trade-Related Aspects of Intellectual Property Rights (TRIPS) administered by the World Trade Organization (WTO) reserve the right to deny patents for plants.

Although the requirements for plant and design patents are substantially the same as those for utility patents, there are some crucial differences. The most important of these is the substitution of a different test for one of the three criteria for patentability discussed in the previous section.

Instead of novelty, utility, and non-obviousness, the criteria for plant patentability are novelty, **distinctiveness**, and non-obviousness. To be patentable, plants must be cultivated rather than found in the wild, and plant patents are granted only to protect a new, distinct, and non-obvious variety of asexually reproduced plant—i.e., those grown not with seeds but by grafting, budding, or cutting. A plant need not be useful to qualify for a patent, but it must be distinctive in its color, habit, soil, flavor, productivity, form, or other aspects.

Design Patents

Design patents are granted to protect new, original, and non-obvious *ornamental* designs for articles of manufacture. Examples include Apple's 2009 and 2010 patents—No. D593087 and No. D618677—which covered

The Sunshine Peach was patented in 1964. Image used under CC-BY-2.0.

among other things the unique, rounded-corner design of the iPhone, as well as its 2005 design patent No. D504889 for the look and feel of the iPad. Design patents can be just as valuable as utility patents, as Apple discovered when a jury awarded it $1 billion in damages against Samsung in August 2012, for the latter's infringement of

This design patent from 1864 was to distinguish Simon Crow's whiskey from its competitors. Image used under public domain.

Apple's utility and design patents. The case is currently on appeal.

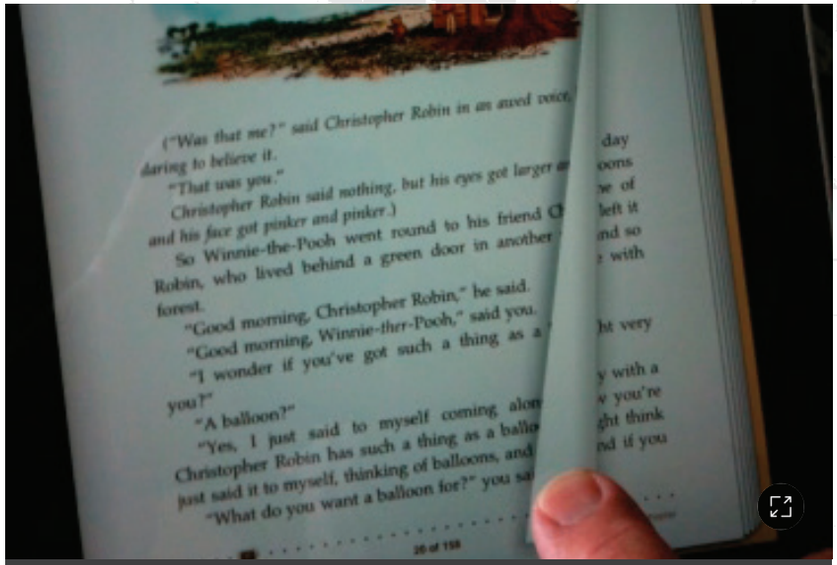
Like plant patents, design patents also substitute a different test than utility in their requirements for patentability. Instead of the novelty, utility, and non-obvious requirements for utility patents, the criteria for design patents are novelty, **ornamentality**, and non-obviousness.

Patent Misconceptions

It was on the subject of design patents that one example of media confusion appeared. The *New York Times* published an article November 16, 2012, declaring in a sensational headline that "Apple Now Owns the Page Turn." The article claimed that a new Apple design patent "gives Apple the exclusive rights to the page turn in an e-reader application." According to the article's author, this showed "just how broken the patent system is."

Had the author of the article even read an obvious and easily-available source as the Wikipedia entry on design patents, however, he would have learned that design patents are granted only for nonfunctional ornamental designs. In fact, says Wikipedia, "design patents can be invalidated if the design has practical utility."

What Apple actually "owns," therefore, is not the "page turn" function itself but merely the particular ornamental design of the way a page turn is executed in their devices.



Apple doesn't own the page-turning function but rather the ornamental design of the way the page is turned in their devices, such as this iPad. Used under CC-BY-3.0.

Another example of confused media reporting on patent matters was the February 6, 2013, *Forbes* article headlined: "Is the Patent System Broken? Well, Amazon's Just Patented the Sale of Second Hand Goods." Amazon actually did no such thing, but the author of that article probably made this assumption after reading the abstract of the patent describing its general subject matter. Like many reporters new to patent issues, the author didn't realize that the abstract tells you literally nothing about the exclusive rights conferred by a patent. Only the claims of the patent detail the specific exclusionary rights of the patent holder.

Indeed, when you read the claims of the Amazon patent in question, you discover that Amazon hasn't claimed ownership of the idea of a "market in second-hand digital goods" at all. Instead, the claims involve merely a very specific and novel method of conducting such a market. Meanwhile, Apple, ReDigi, and other firms have patented their own alternative methods of conducting a secondary digital market.

Check Your Understanding

Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 4 | Section 1.8

For which of the following are plant patents granted?

- ◯ Bioengineered plants
- ◯ Naturally grown plants that are distinctively different
- ◯ Plants that are asexually cultivated, not grown
- ◯ All of the above

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Section 1.9: The Patenting Process

After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Describe the steps in the patent application process.
- Discuss the importance of proper claims drafting.

Applying for a Patent

Much is at stake in the process of applying for a patent. Depending upon how you draft the claims and write the specification of your application, you could win or lose patent rights at any point in the examination process. In addition, any patent rights you win can be worth a considerable amount of money, and can be enforced by the U.S. federal courts.

An applicant must first determine whether to file an application for a utility, design, or plant patent. Then, the applicant must determine his filing status: large entity, small entity, or the new category of micro entity created by the America Invents Act of 2011 (AIA). Small entities, which are universities, non-profits, and small businesses with fewer than 500 employees who also meet certain other criteria, receive a 50 percent discount on the application fees paid by large entities. Micro entities, which are small entities who have a gross income less than three times U.S. median household income or meet certain other criteria, receive a 75 percent discount. These discounts on USPTO fees for small and micro entities do not apply to the

Slide Show

Slide shows available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Micro Entity Status Micro entities, which are defined as small entities that have a gross income less than three times the U.S. median household income or meet certain other criteria, receive a 75 percent discount. These discounts on USPTO fees for small and micro entities do not apply to the attorneys' fees often involved in applying for a patent, which can be significant.

Entity Filing Statuses

attorneys' fees often involved in applying for a patent, which can be significant.

Provisional vs. Nonprovisional Patent Application

Finally, the applicant must decide whether to file an abbreviated, "provisional" patent application or a complete, "nonprovisional" one. A provisional application consists only of the specification describing the invention for which a patent is sought, as well as any drawings that might be necessary to understand the invention. A provisional application is not subject to examination, and is viable for one year.

The chief benefits of a provisional application are twofold. It is much less expensive to file than a regular nonprovisional application—only $1,000 in official fees for large entities, $500 for small entities, and $250 for micro entities. It also gives the inventor the benefit of the earlier provisional filing date of the nonprovisional application based on the same specification, while measuring the term of the patent from the nonprovisional application's filing date.

In a sense, the provisional application serves as a placeholder for up to one year while the inventor does all the prior art searching, claims drafting, and other work required of a full and complete nonprovisional application. This priority date placeholder function can be important given that many companies and inventors are working on new

products and services aimed at the same markets. This is especially so under the United States' new "first inventor to file" rather than "first to invent" priority regime, which some fear may give an edge to large companies with the legal and financial resources to file early and often. To the extent this concern may be valid, provisional applications can serve to mitigate any large company filing advantage.

The main disadvantage of a provisional application is that because the written description cannot be changed when filing the follow-on, nonprovisional application, all the subsequent claims in that follow-on application must be completely consistent with the earlier description language. As most inventors can attest, the understanding of an invention and its potential market—as well as the claims best suited to protect it—inevitably evolves and matures over time.

Here's how an experienced entrepreneur describes the value of a provisional application in the "first inventor to file" environment:

> "What I recommend to every entrepreneur is that if you write a new, non-obvious, and useful line of code, put it in the specification of a provisional patent application and file it. It only costs $1,000 at most. You then have a year in which to honestly evaluate where the industry is going, where the market is going, and whether your invention is truly valuable enough to pursue a patent for it."

A year might not seem very long. But a lot can happen to markets and to technology in that amount of time. Thanks to the rapid rise of smartphones, for example, it took merely a year for netbooks to go from the "next big thing" to "who cares?"

The Critical Importance of the Claims

When it comes to filing a full nonprovisional application, the most critical task of the inventor (and his or her patent attorney) is to draft the claims. This is an art in and of itself, one that will determine the inventor's rights and an infringer's liability.

Each claim serves as a stand-alone definition of the patent coverage—as a sort of mini-patent unto itself. After a patent is granted, a claim is the only thing that someone can be accused of infringing. Accordingly, broad claim language is essential if a commercially meaningful patent is to be obtained.

On the other hand, the broader the claim, the more likely it is that prior art may exist somewhere that anticipates the claim or renders it obvious and, therefore, invalidates the claim. So the competent draftsperson submits a dozen or more claims, typically moving from broader to narrower scope, in case the broader claims turn out to be disallowed by the USPTO or later invalidated by a court.

Some applicants make the opposite mistake and draft claims that are too narrow—"a programmable multifunction computer in the shape of a metal clamshell," for example. Such a claim is of little value because others can easily design around it simply by using plastic or other nonmetal materials in the design. Some claims are so narrow they are even referred to as "picture claims"

In Re David C. Paulsen

In this famous case (*In re Paulsen*), a patent was issued in 1986 that contained broad claims for a computer shaped like a clamshell—essentially, the first laptop computer. Upon reexamination of the patent, however, the USPTO rejected the claims, citing a prior Japanese patent application for a clamshell-shaped calculator. Because a calculator is a type of computer (albeit a very limited one), the USPTO's Board of Patent Appeals upheld the rejection, as did a federal appeals court in 1994.

The lesson here is you should strive to draft the broadest claim consistent with the specification that does not encompass (or "read upon") any known prior art, along with narrower claims as backup. Had David Paulsen limited his claim, for example, to "a programmable multifunction computer in the shape of a clamshell," it would likely have been upheld because the key difference between a computer and calculator is the ability to perform multiple and varied tasks upon user command.

A computer shaped like a clamshell—essentially, a laptop computer. Image used under public domain.

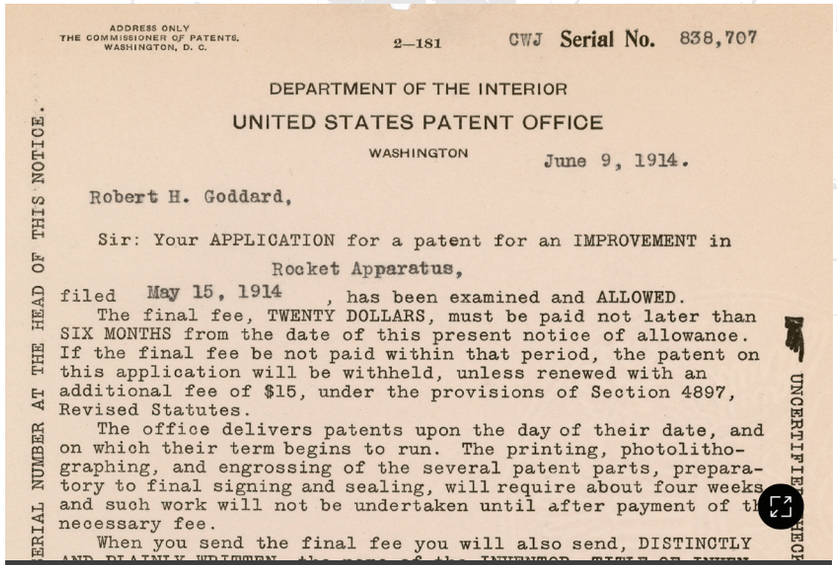
because they paint a literal and limiting picture of the invention. You may get a patent with such picture claims, but it probably won't be worth the paper it's printed on.

The strongest claims usually define powerful functionality. They capture something fundamental or seminal in the functioning of the invention.

A good example is the claims in the aforementioned Amazon one-click patent. The algorithms for "one-click" shopping are not very complicated. Yet the claims capture a very profound functionality—the idea that a user should not have to type in credit card and shipping information every time he or she wants to buy something. The consumer-friendly functionality captured in that patent's claims has won Amazon a lot of customers and made it a lot of money.

Reviewing the Patent Application

Once the patent application with all necessary forms is filed and all fees are paid, the **patent examiner** will review the patent application to determine if the invention meets the statutory requirements for patentability. The examiner will also conduct a search of patent and other databases to determine if the invention appears to be truly novel and non-obvious. Once a determination has been made, the patent examiner will send the applicant a document known as a **first office action**, in which the patent examiner approves, rejects, or requires additional



ADDRESS ONLY
THE COMMISSIONER OF PATENTS,
WASHINGTON, D. C.

2—181 CWJ Serial No. 838,707

DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE

WASHINGTON June 9, 1914.

Robert H. Goddard,

Sir: Your APPLICATION for a patent for an IMPROVEMENT in Rocket Apparatus, filed May 15, 1914, has been examined and ALLOWED.

The final fee, TWENTY DOLLARS, must be paid not later than SIX MONTHS from the date of this present notice of allowance. If the final fee be not paid within that period, the patent on this application will be withheld, unless renewed with an additional fee of $15, under the provisions of Section 4897, Revised Statutes.

The office delivers patents upon the day of their date, and on which their term begins to run. The printing, photolithographing, and engrossing of the several patent parts, preparatory to final signing and sealing, will require about four weeks and such work will not be undertaken until after payment of the necessary fee.

When you send the final fee you will also send, DISTINCTLY

ERIAL NUMBER AT THE HEAD OF THIS NOTICE.

UNCERTIFIED COPY

An approved patent application from 1914. Image used under public domain.

information about the claims and/or other elements of the application.

If all the claims are allowed, which is rare in a first office action, the patent prosecution process is complete. A more common next step requires the applicant to respond to the patent examiner's rejections and requests for more information. In this response, the applicant will address all of the examiner's concerns and either rebut them or amend the application, typically by revising some or all of the claims.

But according to the Manual of Patenting Examination Procedure (MPEP) Section 1.121, "No amendment may introduce new matter into the disclosure of an application."[51] Thus, an applicant cannot file an application disclosing a new compound and how to make it, and then later, after discovering that the compound's structure and method are incorrect, amend the description.

After responding to the office action by perhaps amending the application, the examination process continues until the patent examiner either allows all of the claims or finally rejects them. If all claims are allowed, then the patent prosecution process is complete. If some claims are finally rejected, then the applicant's options at this point are more limited.

According to MPEP Section 706.07, "In the second or any subsequent examination or consideration by the examiner, the rejection can be made final."[52] At that point, the applicant must usually choose

one of three approaches: Cancel the rejected claims, leaving only allowed claims to issue as a patent; continue the fight by filing what is called a "continuation application" and drafting new claims; or appeal to the Patent Trial and Appeals Board arguing that the patent examiner erred in not allowing the claims.[53] Any appeal to the Patent Trial and Appeals Board, as with any other office action, must occur within six months.[54]

Finally, if the patent has been vetted through the patent prosecution process and is ready for issuance, the patent holder must pay the applicable fee. If the applicant pays the issue fee, the USPTO will issue the patent in due course. Additionally, utility patents are subject to maintenance fees. These fees are due 3 years and 6 months, 7 years and 6 months, and 11 years and 6 months from the date of the original patent grant. Plant and design patents are also required to pay maintenance fees.[55]

Check Your Understanding

Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 6 | Section 1.9

What is the advantage of a provisional patent application, which lasts only one year?

- ◯ It is less expensive.
- ◯ It is not subject to examination.
- ◯ It grants an early filing date while the inventor continues working on the invention.
- ◯ All of the above

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

CHAPTER

2

PATENT ENFORCEMENT

Chapter Summary

When the U.S. passed its first patent law in 1790, patent owners were guaranteed exclusive rights to their inventions. When those rights are infringed, patent owners can seek redress in the federal courts. Recently, however, patent enforcement has become a long and expensive process. Parties often seek out-of-court settlements or licensing agreements instead. But despite its costs, patent litigation remains vital to encouraging innovation.

Key Terms

strict liability violation, *doctrine of equivalents*, *royalty*, *complaint*, *venue*, *laches*, *estoppel*, *counterclaims*, *post-grant review*

Section 2.1: The Right to Enforce Patents

After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Understand the basic rights of patent owners.
- Gain an appreciation of the complex process of patent litigation.

Patents issued by the United States Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) can be enforced by their owners in U.S. federal courts. The USPTO is responsible only for examining and issuing patents—it does not enforce them. It is up to the owner of the patent to enforce it against infringers by filing a civil case in federal court for patent infringement.

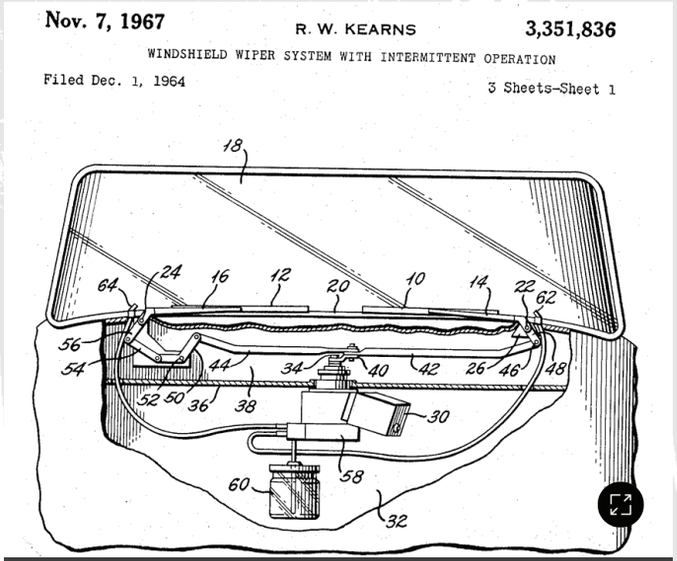
A patent owner is called the "patentee." The patentee has the statutory right to exclude others from making, using, offering for sale, selling, or importing the invention covered by the patent throughout the United States.[1] Recall that these are rights to *exclude* others from using the patentee's invention. The Patent Act does not grant the patent owner the right to practice the invention covered by the patent. Indeed, it may be that the invention, if practiced in the United States, could infringe someone else's patent! For example, if you obtain a patent on an improvement to a patented product (e.g., a faster-acting version of a patented painkiller), you might not be able to sell the improved product unless you obtain a license under the patent for the underlying product.

Infringement is a **strict liability violation**—you do not need to know that

you are infringing a patent, or that a patent even exists, to be liable for patent infringement. If someone makes, uses, offers for sale, sells, or imports what is covered by a claim of a valid patent, that person is an infringer. Neither lack of knowledge of the patent, nor lack of intent to infringe it, is a defense to patent infringement.[2]

Enforcing a patent is almost invariably a long and expensive process. The first step is to decide whether someone is infringing your patent—i.e., making, using, selling, offering to sell, or importing your invention without your permission. To decide whether someone is infringing your patent, the elements of each claim of the patent must be compared with the elements of the potential infringer's device or process. If the elements of a patent claim match (or "read on") the elements of the device or process, an infringement has occurred.

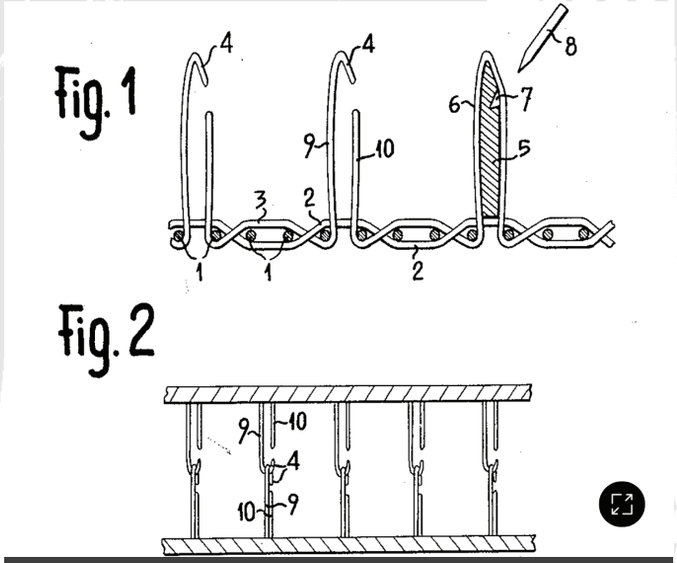
Even if some elements of a claim do not literally read on the infringing device, but are sufficiently equivalent in what the device does and how the device does it, they may nevertheless be infringed under the legal rule called the "**doctrine of equivalents**." This doctrine prevents an infringer from copying the essence of the invention, but making insignificant modifications in an effort to avoid infringement. If the



Robert Kearns was granted a patent on intermittent windshield wipers in 1967. He was successful in two highly publicized patent infringement lawsuits against Ford Motor Company and Chrysler Corporation in the 1990s, and the subject of the 2008 movie *Flash of Genius* starring Greg Kinnear. Image used under public domain.

accused device or process performs substantially the same function in substantially the same way and yields substantially the same result, infringement exists so long as any differences between the claim elements and the accused

device are not substantial. A patent calling for an "adhesive" connection (describing glue as the preferred adhesive) could be infringed by a device using a hook-and-loop fastener (e.g., Velcro). That's because the hook-and-loop fastener arguably performs substantially the same adhesive function in substantially the same way and with substantially the same result as the glue adhesive.



The original 1955 patent for a hook-and-loop fastener that came to be known as Velcro. Image used under public domain.

If a patent owner believes his patents are being infringed, he typically hires a patent trial lawyer who specializes in enforcing patents. Often, but not always, this is a different person at a different law firm than the lawyer or agent who previously assisted the inventor(s) in obtaining a patent from the USPTO. Once the patent trial lawyer is retained, that lawyer will evaluate the patent and the accused device or process, and will provide the patentee a legal opinion about whether or not an infringement exists. If an infringement is found, the patentee then must decide how to proceed. Several options exist.

Options for Pursuing a Patent Infringement Claim

1. Demand that the alleged infringer stop infringing, and pay damages for past infringement.
2. Offer the alleged infringer a license to practice your invention for money, called a "**royalty**."
3. Ignore the infringement, or postpone any action for a time.
4. File a patent infringement lawsuit in federal court against the alleged infringer.

Each option has benefits and risks, which should be carefully considered before proceeding.

Check Your Understanding

Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 4 | Section 2.1

Responsibility for legally enforcing patents rests with which of the following bodies?

- ◯ The U.S. Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO)
- ◯ The U.S. Department of Justice
- ◯ The owner of the patent, suing in a federal civil lawsuit

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Section 2.2: Deciding Whether and How to Enforce a Patent

After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Understand the variety of options one has in enforcing patent rights.
- Appreciate the time and expense involved in doing so.

The decision of how to proceed depends on the patentee's objectives and a clear understanding of the risks and rewards of each potential course of action. If you do not know your objectives, you cannot decide on a course of action to achieve them.

For example, if your goal is to stop a competitor from offering a competing product that infringes your patent, you have little choice but to file a lawsuit and pursue it to completion. This can easily cost from $1 million to over $10 million, depending upon the complexity of the case and the intensity of the defense. If you do not have the resources to pursue such expensive litigation on your own, there are contingency fee lawyers, who may be willing to take your case in return for a share of any damages (typically 30 to 40+ percent) that are collected from the infringer. As of 2014, a wide variety of litigation finance firms exist that may be willing to fund your litigation in return for a share of any damage award or settlement payment you receive.[3]

However, if your goal is to obtain a royalty for the use of your invention, you may

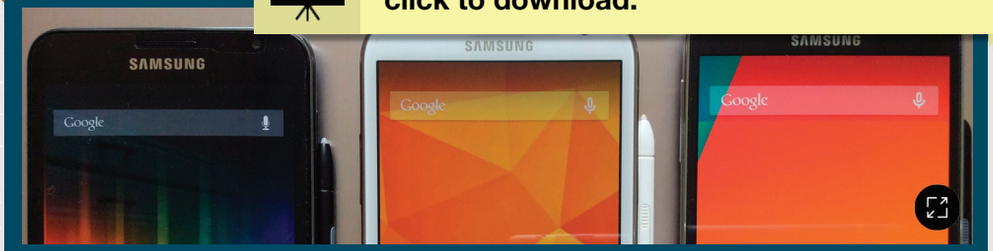
be able to negotiate a license agreement without the need for litigation. Even if the infringer balks at an agreement unless you initiate a lawsuit, often the lawsuit can be settled via a license agreement short of trial. About 95 percent of patent lawsuits settle before trial, many with the defendant(s) taking a license for which they pay a royalty.[4]

Even small entities and individuals can successfully license a patent without filing a lawsuit if they have a good patent and a reasonable licensing plan. Most prospective licensees know that lawsuits are very expensive and would prefer to settle a dispute with a license rather than fight a lawsuit and end up taking a license later. The key is to have a plan, and implement it diligently, with good counsel supporting the effort.

Thus, the first step in deciding if and how you will enforce your patent is deciding what you want to achieve and how

Slide Show

Slide shows available in free iBooks version, click to download.



Lawyers, like the one pictured here, will work with you in order to protect your work and reach an agreement with any other parties. Image used under public domain, via flickr.

How to Protect Your Work

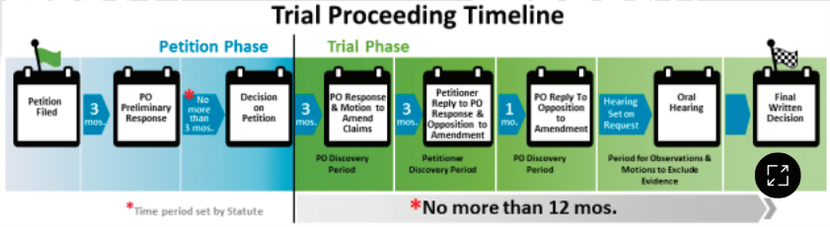
Negotiate a License Agreement If you want royalties for your invention instead, you may be able to negotiate a license agreement without having to file a lawsuit. Many patent lawsuits settle before trial by negotiating a license agreement.

much effort, and money, you are willing to devote to the endeavor. The "costs" of enforcement are not limited to the out-of-pocket expenses for lawyers and litigation expenses. Any enforcement effort requires the time and attention of the patentee, whether an individual or company, which disrupts normal business activities. The time and attention required includes providing information and documents, reviewing pleadings prepared by your lawyers, analyzing information received from your opponent during the

litigation, appearing for depositions and other pretrial proceedings, and appearing at trial. Just the information and document gathering can consume hundreds, even thousands, of person hours and disrupt the normal operations of virtually every part of an organization.

Enforcing a patent also takes time. Lawsuits typically take two to four years to reach trial. Post-trial proceedings can take another six months to a year, and appeals take several additional years before the lawsuit is "finished."

On the positive side, successful patentees can reap huge monetary damages for another's patent infringement, including lost profits, treble damages (i.e., triple the amount of money



This timeline of patent trial proceedings can be found on USPTO.gov. Image used under public domain.

damages found), and, in exceptional cases, an award of the patentee's attorneys' fees. Awards of tens to hundreds of millions, and occasionally even billions, of dollars can be achieved, even if they are not typical. If you sell a product or service and are asserting your patent against a competitor, you can also obtain an injunction barring your competitor from continuing its infringement. This can reap huge additional rewards, measured in increased market share and pricing power.

Patents not only offer patentees the opportunity to play offense in the marketplace, but also provide a very potent defense against charges of infringement (or other claims) by others. Competitors are wary of attacking businesses with extensive patent portfolios. The recent "smartphone wars" are a timely example. After becoming embroiled in patent litigation with Apple and Oracle over its Android operating system and the phones that use it, Google spent $12.5 billion to acquire Motorola Mobility in August 2011 to gain access to its extensive patent

portfolio so that it would have patent weapons of its own.[5] Google also acquired 1,023 more patents from IBM for an undisclosed amount around the same time.[6] Perhaps this was also partly in response to Apple joining with BlackBerry maker Research In Motion (RIM), Microsoft, Ericsson, Sony, and EMC to buy 6,000 patents owned by Nortel for $4.5 billion in July 2011, largely to keep them from falling into the hands of competitors like Google and Samsung.[7]

Expert assistance in making the decision to enforce your patent, and to map out the "who, what, where, when, and how" of doing so, is critically important. A variety of lawyers and law firms specialize in patent trials, from solo practitioners to multinational law firms. The choice depends on your needs, means, and objectives.

Check Your Understanding

Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 2 | Section 2.2

If you believe your patent is being infringed, you have how many options for recourse?

- ◯ Two. You can sue the infringer in federal court, or ignore the infringement.
- ◯ Three. Besides the two above, you can simply demand he stop infringing.
- ◯ Four. You can sue the infringer, demand he stop infringing and pay monetary damages, offer the infringer a license in return for royalties, or ignore it.

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Section 2.3: Patent Litigation

After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Understand the pros and cons in deciding who, what, where, when, and how to sue an infringer.

Once a decision is made to enforce a patent via litigation, a complex series of steps begins that determine the "who, what, where, when, and how" of events that will unfold.

ANSWERING THE "WHO, WHAT, WHERE, WHEN, AND HOW" OF PATENT LITIGATION	
Who?	Determine the corporation or individual(s) who infringed and whether they should be sued individually or collectively.
What?	Create a claim chart detailing your patent claims and the product or service that has infringed upon them.
Where?	Determine your venue options and select the one that aligns most closely with your objectives.
When?	Once infringement has been discovered, the claim should be filed as soon as you have sufficient evidence to prove the claim.
How?	Plaintiffs may select whether their claim is decided by a judge or jury. The complexity of the case often informs this decision.

Who

First you decide whom to sue. Many options may exist. If the infringer is a corporation, you can sue it. But you can also sue its owners and/or officers if it is a closely held company or is dominated

by a single shareholder or manager. If the infringer has subsidiaries, you must choose which of them to include as defendants. Recall that your patent gives you the right to exclude others from making, using, selling, offering for sale, or importing your invention in the territory the patent covers. (We will assume for simplicity that you own a U.S. patent; foreign patents can be obtained in other countries and enforcement of those foreign patents is subject to their local laws.) Any person or entity that violates one of these exclusive rights is a potential defendant.

Strategic issues should be considered in deciding whom to sue. For example, the location of one or more defendants may make it hard to include them in a lawsuit filed in a place ("forum") convenient to you. Although the infringer's customers are also infringers (i.e., they "use" the infringing product or service), most patentees disfavor suing customers because these are also the patentee's customers or potential customers—and suing them may be bad for business. Often, the manufacturer or seller of the infringing product or service indemnifies and defends its customers. In other words, in many cases the manufacturer or seller of a product will agree to "cover" its customers in the event of a patent infringement claim. So, if the infringing manufacturer and/or seller is already a defendant, you gain little by suing customers, except their ire! Thus, select your defendants carefully, with your desired end result in mind.

Another strategic decision, when more than one infringer exists, is whether to sue them one at a time or collectively.[8] Common sense might suggest suing them one at a time, to avoid having them gang up on you. But experience shows that suing multiple defendants simultaneously is often a better strategy. It turns out that, in many cases, rather than encouraging them to gang up on you, they spend most of their energy trying to sort out differences among themselves and trying to present a united front.

Although the America Invents Act narrowed the joinder rule in patent cases beginning in September, 2011 to cases where a plaintiff can show a "common question of law or fact" as well as a true

"transaction or occurrence" between the defendants (which must be more than infringement of the same patent), judges still typically consolidate separate cases involving the same patent for their own convenience in handling discovery and pre-trial issues. Thus, proceeding simultaneously against multiple defendants can still be an effective strategy.

What

Which patents (if you have more than one) and which claims of those patents you assert in a lawsuit is another important decision you must make. Twenty years ago, you could simply file a lawsuit against an alleged infringer, listing your patent(s) and little more. You could defer deciding which claims to assert against which allegedly infringing products or services until after you received information from the defendant(s) through discovery in the litigation. However, courts now routinely require that you provide details in the **complaint** you file, or shortly after, about which patent claims are asserted against which product or service, and also that you provide a "claim chart" that details those assertions precisely. Although it is possible to revise these assertions after receiving more information during the discovery process, your initial assertions remain in the court's record and can come back to haunt you if they are not consistent with your revised assertions. Therefore, careful pre-filing investigation and analysis is crucial to a successful pursuit of the infringers.

Ideally, hire not only an experienced patent trial lawyer to guide this effort, but also the experts you will rely on in the litigation, and who will testify during the trial on how and why the accused products or services infringe your patent(s). Experts can provide essential evidence of the infringement during the trial. Good experts are critical to success in litigation, as much as experienced trial lawyers, but are sometimes surprisingly hard to find. First, you must find an expert who is neutral, or at least appears so. Most experts are employed in the same field as the patentee and the alleged infringer, making them potentially unsuitable candidates because they have allegiances to existing companies that suggest the possibility of bias. Second, a good expert

must not only know his or her subject thoroughly, but also be able to communicate it to a lay audience (i.e., the nonexpert judge and jury). Such communication skills are not always found in experts with strong technical credentials. Finally, you want an expert who has the right skills, but not one who appears to be a hired gun (exemplified by someone who spends most of his or her time testifying for a fee).

Thus, prepare in advance, and hire experts early in the process, both to assist your preparations and to remain available during the progress of the lawsuit and for trial.

Where

The selection of where to file is an important, perhaps determinative, decision. As we have noted, patent infringement cases seeking damages can only be filed in U.S. federal courts (as opposed to state courts). If your defendant is a private party, the proper location for the case (called "**venue**") is the federal district court in the geographic location where the defendant is incorporated or resides, or where the claim arose.[9]

The first two criteria are usually easily determined—i.e., a company's state of incorporation is a matter of public record, as are the places where it has facilities. The place where the claim arose includes every place the infringing product or service is made, sold, offered for sale, used, or imported. If it is a low volume product or service, or is very new or lightly distributed, the proper venues may be quite limited. But typically products or services with enough sales to justify a multimillion dollar patent infringement lawsuit are broadly available throughout the country, opening up virtually any federal court as a possible venue.

Thus, you can, and should, select a venue that meets your objectives as closely as possible. Some venues (e.g., the Eastern District of Virginia and the Western District of Wisconsin) have reputations (and rules) for moving cases through to trial very quickly, often in less than a year. Speed is desirable in terms of reaching a conclusion quickly, but has its downsides in terms of accelerated costs and maximum disruption to the normal business operations of you and your opponent. Other districts exhibit much slower progress toward

trial, which may be desirable or undesirable in meeting your particular objectives.

Another factor is experience. Some district courts have handled many complex patent cases, have detailed rules about what must be done to get the case ready for trial, and an excellent track record on appeal. Still other districts have reputations for being "plaintiff friendly" or "defendant friendly," although these reputations are often more "urban legend" than accurate. In any given case, the outcome is dependent on the parties, the facts, the lawyers, and the judge/jury assigned.

Experienced patent trial counsel can assist you in making an appropriate choice of venue for your case, taking into account the myriad factors pertinent to your case.

When

The timing of filing suit is often dictated by when you discover the existence of the infringement and have gathered the required information for drafting a complaint and the necessary initial disclosures. But other considerations may be relevant also, such as the timing of industry trade shows, holiday sales pushes, or the financing activities of your opponent. Absent any other constraints or objectives, lawsuits should usually be filed as soon after the infringing activity is discovered as possible, given the need to investigate and prepare before filing a complaint.

At the outside, any suit filed more than six years after the infringement began and was reasonably capable of being discovered can give rise to a defense of "**laches**" and/or "**estoppel**" by your opponent. In other words, the accused infringer is arguing that you waited too long to bring your infringement claim. It may be necessary for you to prove that the defendant was not prejudiced by your delay. If laches applies, which simply means you waited an unreasonable time to make your claim, prejudicing your opponent, your damages will be limited to those that arise after you filed your lawsuit. If estoppel applies, which means that you not only delayed, but affirmatively

misled your opponent into believing you would not file suit, your claim is barred altogether.

Another issue you face is whether to notify the alleged infringer before filing suit. This seems prudent—demand that the infringer cease the infringement before filing a lawsuit aimed at enforcing such cessation. But such a strategy is fraught with pitfalls. First, accusing someone of infringement allows them to sue you preemptively, asking the court for a quick decision that no infringement exists. This type of judicial decision is called a declaratory judgment of noninfringement.[10] If the accused infringer sues you before you sue them, the accused infringer becomes the plaintiff and can sue in a forum of their choice. Ceding to your opponent the initiative and the choice of forum for the litigation is a strategic blunder that could cost you not just that battle, but the war. Second, an old adage applies here: If you are going to kick someone, don't warn them, because they will prepare to deflect the blow. Patent litigation (like all litigation) is like war, albeit civilized war. Ceding to your opponent important strategic advantages, such as the choice of forum and the element of surprise, is costly and can be fatal.

So, do these considerations dictate that you ambush your opponent and appear to be unreasonable by suing without notice? No, a middle ground does exist. Consider filing the lawsuit simultaneously with, or immediately after, making a demand that the infringer cease the infringing activities. You can defer formally "serving" the lawsuit on your opponent (that is, providing notice by delivering the complaint) for at least 30 days, and as long as 90 days in some courts. This allows you to negotiate with your opponent from a position of strength and with your choice of forum firmly established, without appearing unreasonable.

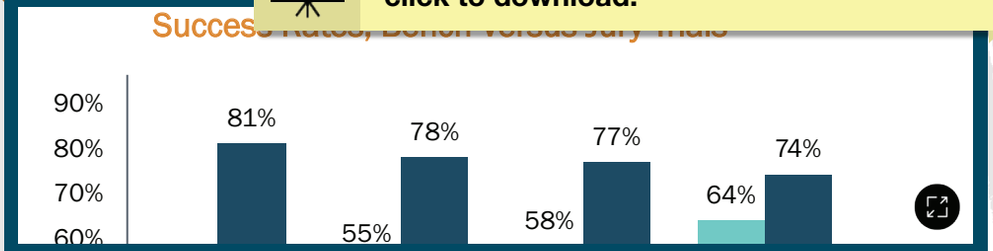
How

Once you choose to file suit in federal court, the how is largely dictated by the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, the Federal Rules of Evidence,

and the local rules of the chosen venue. However, one important decision remains—judge or jury.[11] Until the 1990s, almost all patent cases were tried to a judge because they were thought to be too complex for juries. But then some enterprising plaintiffs' lawyers decided to request that a jury decide their case, perhaps seeking to take advantage of the complexity of the cases and the belief that juries trust patents because they are issued by the federal government after examination by USPTO experts. That has led to the current reality, which is that almost all patent cases filed now request a jury trial. Interestingly, statistics show that this trend does not always benefit plaintiffs. Depending on the venue, plaintiffs only win 60 to 75 percent of the time, despite having the advantage of being able to pick what cases they file (presumably they self-select only the strongest cases) and where they file them (i.e., they can select what they think is the most favorable forum—often their own hometown).[12] Of course, the outcome of a particular case depends on a myriad of factors unique to that case. No party can be assured victory when a jury is involved.

Slide Show

Slide shows available in free iBooks version, click to download.



Between 1995 and 1999, jury trials had a higher success rate than bench trials. Over the years, however, bench trials success rates have increased and jury trials have slightly decreased to a 74% success rate for trial by jury and 64% for bench trial from 2010 to 2013, narrowing the gap.

Bench vs. Jury Trials

Success Rates for Bench vs. Jury Trials

Check Your Understanding

Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 3 | Section 2.3

If you think multiple parties are infringing, what is your best strategy?

- ◯ Sue them one at a time, so they don't gang up on you.
- ◯ Pick the one with the biggest pockets, as the settlement will likely be larger.
- ◯ Sue them all simultaneously, and let them sort out their differences.

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Section 2.4: Getting Started

After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Understand the various pretrial motions available to parties in a litigation.

Once the decision to file suit is made, and all the factors noted above are considered, the complaint is filed in the clerks' office of the selected federal court and served in due course on the defendant(s).[13] The defendant(s) must then decide whether to move to dismiss or transfer the case to a different venue, or file an answer (a response to the infringement claim).[14] The defendant(s) can also file a counterclaim, asserting claims back against the plaintiff.[15]

Motions to dismiss may be based on any number of issues—improper jurisdiction (e.g., the court does not have power over the defendant because it does not reside or do business within the geographic jurisdiction of that court), improper venue (e.g., the defendant does not reside or did not commit any act of infringement in the jurisdiction of the court), failure to state a proper claim, etc.[16] Such a motion must be accompanied by a legal brief explaining the reasons for the motion, to which the plaintiff can file an opposing brief. The defendant who filed the motion usually has an opportunity to file a reply brief. After the briefing is completed, which can take one to two months, the court will decide the motion with an order, either granting or denying it.

Motions to transfer can be filed by a defendant who believes another court would be a "better" place to proceed

with the case.[17] The factors considered by the court as to whether it or another court is "better" include which court is most convenient in terms of the location of necessary witnesses and/or documents, and whether another court already has experience with the subject matter because a related case is pending or was handled there and it can handle the new case more efficiently. Such motions usually fail, but can delay the progress of the case by several months, sometimes longer, while the court considers how to rule on the motion. The parties must present detailed arguments about why the case should be moved, or not, and often the court will order oral argument during which each party can present its position and answer questions the court may have.

If no motions are filed by the defendant(s), or if they are denied, the defendant(s) must file an answer, which responds to the allegations in the complaint and sets forth any defenses the defendant(s) may have.[18] Such defenses can include that the patent is not infringed, that the patent is invalid, that the defendant has a license, that the plaintiff waited too long to file suit (laches) or misled the defendant into believing he or she would not complain about the alleged infringement (estoppel), that the alleged infringer is entitled to prior user rights,[19] or myriad other defenses that may be available.[20]

The defendant(s) may also file one or more **counterclaims**, which are essentially new charges filed against the plaintiff.[21] If such counterclaims are related to the subject matter of the initial case, they may be tried at the same time. If not, they may be severed and tried separately, either before or after the initial case.

The plaintiff has an opportunity to file a reply to the answer and an answer to any counterclaim that the defendant(s) file.[22] If a counterclaim is filed, followed by an answer, then the defendant(s) can file a reply to the plaintiff's answer.[23]

Once these initial pleadings are filed, which usually takes about 60 days from when the initial complaint is filed, the case is considered "at issue" and the pretrial proceedings commence.

Defendants in patent cases are increasingly turning to a strategy of filing requests for **post-grant review** in the PTO to derail a patentee's efforts to enforce the patent. Although beyond the scope of this chapter, a post-grant review essentially asks the PTO to take another look at whether the patent is valid, i.e., whether it should have been granted in the first place. The requestor of any post-grant review must present supporting evidence to show that some issue renders one or more of the patent's claims invalid. The post-grant review request can be either *ex parte reexamination* (meaning the patentee does not get to participate) or *inter partes review* (in which the patentee is allowed to participate), or **covered business methods review** (to review patents that claim a method or corresponding apparatus for performing data processing or other operations used in the practice, administration, or management of a financial product or service). Complex rules govern these proceedings, and they changed in 2011 under the **America Invents Act (AIA)**, which substantially revised the nation's patent laws in a number of important ways.[24]

The significance to a patentee of an opponent requesting post-grant review is twofold. First, the patentee risks losing its patent if the PTO finds it is invalid, and this is exactly what has happened in a majority of *inter partes review* hearings as of March, 2016. Second, a defendant requesting post-grant review usually asks the court to **stay** (i.e., temporarily suspend) the patent case filed against it while the PTO evaluates the patent, arguing that the result of the PTO's actions may either invalidate or modify the patent such that the court should await the outcome before proceeding with the litigation. This strategy has been successful in many courts.

Check Your Understanding

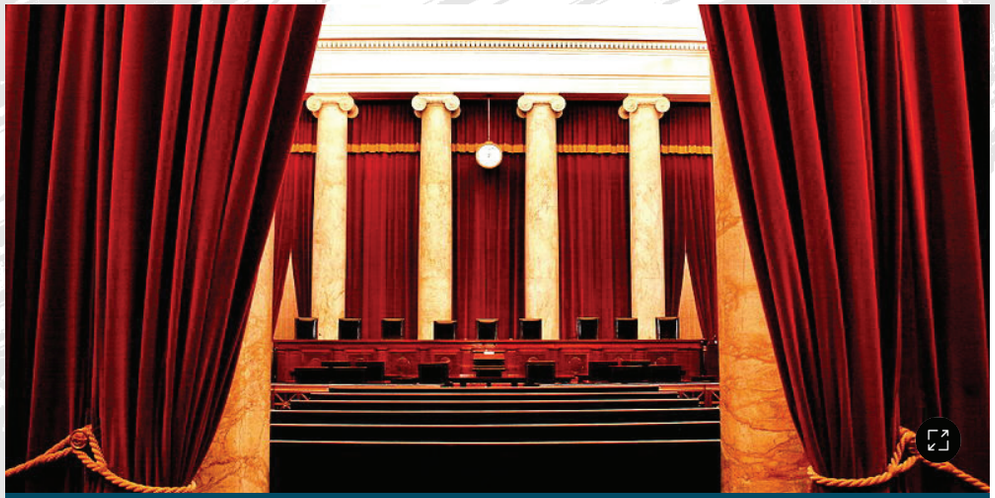
Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 3 | Section 2.4

Which of the following is NOT a valid reason for filing a motion to dismiss once a suit is filed in a federal court?

- ◯ Improper jurisdiction
- ◯ Improper venue
- ◯ Improper (or invalid) patent
- ◯ Failure to state a proper claim

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Section 2.5: Pretrial Procedures



After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Understand the multiple procedures involved in the pretrial phase of patent litigation.
- Appreciate the costs involved and the ways they affect the ultimate trial outcome.

The first steps in the pretrial procedure are the filing by the parties of their "initial disclosures" and the holding of the preliminary pretrial conference.[25] Initial disclosures must provide preliminary information about each party's positions in the case, and disclose the identity and location of witnesses and documents likely to be relevant to the issues in the case.[26] These disclosures help frame the "discovery," or information that the parties can request of each other, which is one of the hallmarks of litigation in the United States and one of the drivers of the expense of litigation. The concept is laudable—require each party to disclose the information it has relevant to the case to preclude a "trial by ambush." But, in practice, discovery can become an endless game of cat and mouse, with costs escalating exponentially. We will talk more about discovery shortly.

The preliminary pretrial conference is usually the first time the parties appear in court before the judge, unless there has been a hearing on a pretrial motion (as discussed above). At this conference, the judge discusses with the parties the issues likely to arise in the case, the time that pretrial discovery is expected to take, and any issues that make the case unique (such as witnesses in foreign

The scheduling order for a typical patent trial.

countries that require extraordinary means to obtain their testimony for trial). Each party is usually required to submit a report to the court in advance of this conference, proposing what the timeline for the case should be and identifying any unique issues. The court typically issues a **scheduling order** at, or shortly after, the pretrial conference, specifying dates by which certain activities must be concluded. This order often "splits the baby" between the plaintiff's and defendant's proposed schedules (the plaintiff usually seeks speed while the defendant usually seeks delay). The figure below shows a typical scheduling order.

The scheduling order will also usually specify a length of the trial (e.g., 8 trial days), subject to revision at the final pretrial conference. A typical patent trial is scheduled to last from 5 to 20 trial days, but some can take much longer. Let's look at each step of this schedule to understand what is happening.

Protective Order

Before information is shared between the parties, they usually agree on a protective order, which they will ask the court to enter, that specifies who has access to the confidential information produced during discovery in the litigation.[27] This is important to all parties, and even third parties that may be asked to produce information during discovery, because sensitive business, technical, and financial information is routinely requested by and produced to each party during the lawsuit. The protective order proscribes that the disclosure of

confidential information during discovery is limited to lawyers involved in handling the case, outside experts retained by the lawyers to assist them, and court reporters (who record testimony during the case), videographers (who videotape deposition testimony, as is now common), and court personnel. It is also typical that certain employees of each party (usually in-house lawyers and/or businesspeople directly involved in the oversight of the case) are also permitted to review certain materials, but not financial information of a competitor or future business plans, which are usually excluded from being disclosed to any party employees.

Everyone authorized to see confidential information is under court order to restrict use of the information to the pending lawsuit, not to disclose it to anyone not authorized by the protective order to see it, and requiring that all copies be returned or destroyed at the end of the case.

Discovery

After the preliminary pretrial conference, discovery begins, which results in the exchange of documents, written responses, and witness testimony.[28]

A request for production allows a party to demand that another party turn over relevant documents and electronically stored information in its possession or control, as well as an inspection of property (such as a manufacturing facility) to take photographs, measurements, and the like.[29] Documents and other tangible items can also be requested from third parties (i.e., people and entities not named as a party in the lawsuit) via subpoena.[30]

Interrogatories are written questions that a party can ask of other parties in the litigation, but not of third parties. Such questions can request any nonprivileged information that is relevant to any party's claim or defense—including the existence, description, nature, custody, condition, and location of any documents or other tangible things and the identity and location of persons who know of any discoverable information that may be relevant to the subject matter of the litigation.[31] Interrogatories may also ask for opinions or the

legal contentions of another party. The initial limit on the number of interrogatories is 25, including subparts. However, upon a showing of good cause, courts routinely permit additional interrogatories in patent litigation because the issues are usually complex. [32] Answers to interrogatories are binding on the party providing them and may be used as admissions in the litigation, including at trial.

Depositions are interviews used to elicit testimony from witnesses having relevant knowledge.[33] This is similar to eliciting testimony during a trial, but occurs in a conference room with a court reporter present to record what is said. The judge is not present at depositions, but may intervene if a controversy arises. Testimony can also be requested by written questions to a witness, which the witness then answers and returns to the requesting party, called a deposition by written questions.[34]

Although in the United States, it is usually required that testimony at trial be presented live, with the opportunity for the opposing party to cross-examine the witness and for the jury and/or judge to assess each witness's demeanor in person, testimony elicited via depositions during discovery may be used at trial under certain circumstances.[35] For example, if a witness dies before trial, or is unavailable through no fault of the party seeking to use the deposition testimony, the deposition may be used as testimony at trial in lieu of live testimony from the witness. Also, the deposition testimony of an opposing party or an officer or manager of the opposing party corporation may be used at trial for any purpose. Usually, however, deposition testimony is used primarily to "impeach" a witness testifying live at trial—that is, to show that the witness at trial has changed his or her prior testimony from when he or she gave the deposition. Videotaped deposition testimony is very effective to show to a judge or jury during trial that the witness has changed his or her testimony—such as from "No" to "Yes" or the equivalent!

The parties can also demand that another party admit, for purposes of the pending litigation only, the truth of any facts, opinions, or conclusions,

or the genuineness of any documents relevant to any party's claim or defense. Such demands are called requests for admission.[36] The responses to these demands are binding on the responding party and can be used to conclusively establish the matters admitted in the litigation, including at trial.

Amendments to the Pleadings

Once initial information is obtained via discovery, the parties may be permitted to amend or supplement their pleadings (i.e., the complaint, answer, counterclaim, etc.) to address information or issues uncovered during the initial discovery.[37] For example, the plaintiff may uncover information about other companies, products, or services involved in the infringement and seek to add them to the lawsuit. A defendant may uncover information about invalidity defenses not previously known to it and want to add those to its answer.

Close of Discovery

This is the date by which all requests for documents, information, and depositions must be complete. It is usually interpreted as requiring that all responses to requests for production, interrogatories, and requests for admissions be answered by the end date set by the court, which means that the actual requests must be made sufficiently in advance of this date (typically 31 days—because responses are due to most discovery requests within 30 days) to allow the responses to be due before the cutoff date. Any depositions must also be completed by the date for the close of discovery (although the parties usually agree to finish select depositions after this date in order to accommodate scheduling problems).

Claim Construction Briefing and Hearing

In virtually every patent case, a dispute arises over the meaning of certain language used in the

asserted claims of the patents at issue. These are called "claim construction" disputes, and must be resolved by the judge before trial. The parties are permitted to provide their competing arguments in briefs to the court, usually after discovery is completed, and make an oral argument on their respective positions to the court at a claim construction hearing. These hearings are often called **Markman hearings**, after the name of the case that established that the judge, and not the jury, must decide the proper meaning of disputed claim language.[38]

This is a critical juncture in every patent case because the opposing parties try to craft an interpretation of the claim language that supports their respective positions. Most patent claims are drafted using a range of language, from specific to general, in an effort by the patentee (and his or her lawyer) to cover as much territory for the claim as possible. The PTO interprets proposed claims in the broadest reasonable way possible, and then compares their scope with the prior art, before allowing them. The goal of the patentee in dealing with the PTO is to get allowed the broadest claims possible, in order to get the broadest patent coverage possible. But the use of broad, general language in claims permits the parties in later litigation to argue for different interpretations, depending on their interests at the time of litigation. Thus, a plaintiff seeks an interpretation that is broad enough to encompass the defendant's products and services so that infringement can be proven. In contrast, the defendant proposes a narrow interpretation (or "construction") that excludes its products and services.

The court resolves the dispute over the meaning of the contested claim terms by referring to the language of the claims, the language and drawings in the patent, and the history of the proceedings in the PTO that led to the issuance of the patent. The written record of that history is preserved in what is call a "file wrapper," so named because all the written documents making up the history are contained in a three-part file folder, the two outer portions of which fold over and "wrap" the documents within it. The patentee is bound by

what it told the PTO to secure allowance of the patent. The court interprets the language according to its ordinary meaning to someone of ordinary skill in the art to which the invention pertains, unless the patentee specially defined the language within the patent or its file wrapper.

Once the claim construction decision is made by the court, the scope of the patent(s) in the case is fixed, and the only remaining issue for trial is whether the claims of the patent(s) as interpreted by the court are broad enough to include the accused products and services of the defendant(s).

Summary Judgment Briefing and Hearing

Summary judgment is a procedure that obviates a trial where one of the parties can show that its opponent cannot win—as a matter of law.[39] That is, if one party can show that the evidence is so clear that no fact dispute exists (i.e., no reasonable fact finder, whether judge or jury, could decide otherwise) and that the law requires the case be decided in favor of the party moving for summary judgment, the court can decide the case without holding a trial. The judge must decide such motions based only on the applicable law (which the judge determines), the evidence (i.e., documents, interrogatory answers, admissions, and deposition testimony) developed during discovery, and the court's claim construction decision, giving the benefit of any doubt about the facts to the nonmoving party. If the court finds that a fact relevant to the outcome is in dispute, summary judgment must be denied and a trial held to resolve that factual dispute.

Understandably, these are hotly contested motions. The moving party hopes to avoid the need for a trial, and the uncertainty a jury introduces, by having the judge decide the case in its favor early on. The nonmoving party wants to go to trial, and hope that the fluid events that are the essence of a jury trial will convince the jury to decide the case in its favor.

In recent years, most patent cases are resolved on summary judgment and only a handful go to trial (about 100 per year throughout the country). The primary reason for this phenomenon is the advent of the claim construction (Markman) hearing and the decision by the court, before trial, about how the language of the asserted claims must be interpreted. The court's claim construction decision resolves most of the uncertainty in a patent case, because what the accused products or services are, and how they operate, is rarely in dispute by the time discovery concludes.

The end result is that the case is often either settled after the claim construction decision, or decided in favor of one side or the other at the summary judgment stage. If summary judgment is granted, the losing party can appeal the decision to the United States Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit, which is the appellate court to which all decisions in patent cases are appealed.

Final Pretrial Order and Conference

The final pretrial order is the document that sets forth the "ground rules" for the trial.[40] It typically identifies all the positions of each party, every issue in dispute in the case that must be resolved by order of the court or at trial, all the documents the parties may seek to introduce into evidence at the trial, and each witness that is expected to be called to testify, either live or via their deposition. The judge issues the order based on a draft prepared by the parties and once issued, it defines the issues that may be raised at the trial. If there is to be a jury trial, the order can rarely be modified after the final pretrial conference. If the trial is before the judge only (referred to as a "bench trial"), the judge may be more lenient in allowing modifications to the final pretrial order because he is the person deciding the case and can adjust more readily than a jury.

Check Your Understanding

Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 2 | Section 2.5

What role does discovery play in an infringement case?

- ◯ Through production of documents and interrogatories, either side may discover information that may be decisive in confirming or rebutting infringement claims.
- ◯ Discovery is often an endless fishing expedition that escalates the costs to both parties exponentially.
- ◯ Both of these describe the role of discovery in an infringement case.

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Section 2.6: Trial

After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Understand the importance of jury selection and opposing arguments.
- Grasp why patent trials are often called "morality plays."

The following describes a jury trial. A bench trial is essentially the same, but without the elements involving the jury.[41]

Jury Selection

The trial begins with the selection of the jury. The jury is selected (or "picked") from a group of prospective jurors called to court to serve in accordance with the laws and practices of the local jurisdiction.

Each judge has his or her own procedure for picking a jury. Most involve a questionnaire that each prospective juror must complete and provide to the judge and the parties' lawyers. The answers are intended to reveal whether any reason exists why a prospective juror should not serve on the jury. Typical reasons for excluding a prospective juror include that he or she works for or knows one of the lawyers in the case, works for or does business with one of the parties, has a close relative that works for one of the parties, knows something about

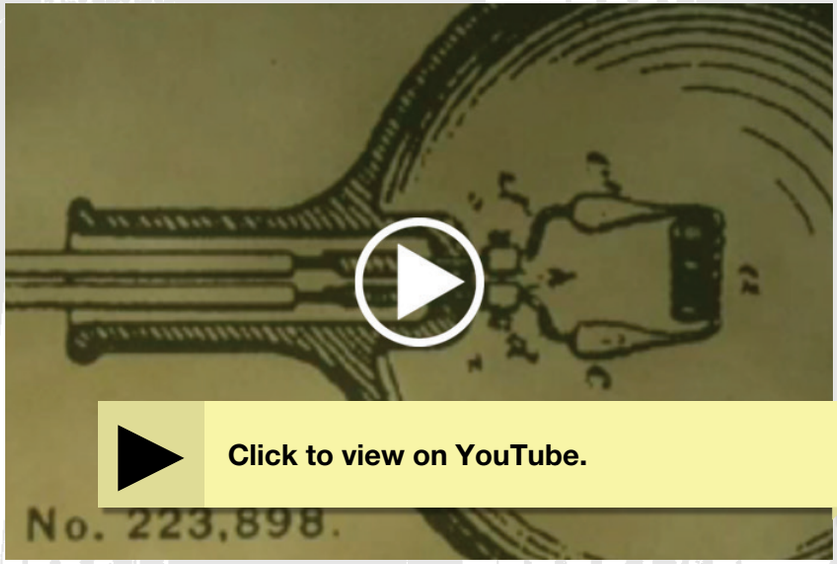
the subject matter of the case, or is unable to serve because of a disability or a previously planned vacation for which he or she has already purchased a nonrefundable ticket. The judge also typically asks the prospective jurors whether they have a bias or prejudice that would prevent them from making a fair decision.

Once the judge has "excused" from serving any prospective jurors for "cause" (i.e., because of one of the reasons listed above or some other reason that court believes provides good cause for excusing that person), the clerk selects at random from the remaining prospective jurors the number that will be seated as the jury, plus six. The number of jurors seated in a case depends on the expected length of the trial and the practices of that judge. At least six and no more than twelve jurors must decide a case, but any number between six and twelve can be seated.[42] The reason a court usually seats more than six jurors is to assure that the trial will end with at least the minimum of six jurors necessary to decide the case even if one or more jurors need to be excused during the trial, such as for illness or emergency. Judges typically seat seven to nine jurors for this reason. Only rarely do judges in civil patent cases seat a full twelve jurors, because once seated a juror must participate in reaching the decision (unless excused for cause), and all jury decisions in federal cases, including patent cases, must be unanimous.[43] The general rule is, the more jurors there are, the longer it takes for them to reach a unanimous verdict, and the higher the likelihood that the case will result in a "hung" jury (i.e., an inability for the jury to reach a unanimous decision).

The clerk selects the designated number for the jury, plus six, because each party gets three "peremptory challenges" to the proposed jury panel, whereby a party can remove a juror without having to give a reason why. Thus, if the judge has decided the jury should begin with eight jurors, the clerk will select 14 so that the plaintiff and defendant (collectively if there is more than one plaintiff and/or defendant) are

each able to strike or eliminate three prospective jurors, leaving eight to hear the case.

Once the jury is picked and sworn in, the judge will give the jury preliminary jury instructions. These explain what the case is about, how the trial will proceed, and a description of what a patent is and how the patent system works. Occasionally, judges opt to show the jury the video below, entitled "An Introduction to the Patent System," which was created by the Federal Judicial Center and is intended to be neutral.[44]



Click to view on YouTube.

Opening Statements

The next step is the opening statements by the opposing parties, starting with the plaintiff and followed by the defendant. If there are multiple plaintiffs or defendants, the judge will give equal time to each side and let the individual parties work out the allocation of time. The opening statement is intended to provide a road map for the jury about what the party intends to prove, and is expected to be devoid of argument. But lawyers rarely present an opening statement without some argument. The judge can intercede, and an opposing party may object, if a party crosses the "no argument" line too far.

The opening statements are where many believe the trial is won or lost because the jury forms initial opinions about who is right and who is wrong in the case based on what they hear at this beginning stage. Thus, each party's trial lawyer tries to craft a story to tell that casts their client in the best possible light. Trials can be likened to a morality play, in which each party tries to cast themselves

as in the right, and the opponent as doing them wrong. In patent cases, plaintiffs often portray defendants as thieving freeloaders, attempting to benefit unfairly from the inventiveness of the plaintiff rather than invest in developing their own products. Defendants, on the other hand, often portray patentees as greedy monopolists, trying to stifle competition and deny consumers choice and less-expensive alternatives.

Whether or not the common wisdom is correct, it is with the opening statements that the jurors begin their struggle to find truth among the competing stories they will hear during the trial.

The Evidence is Presented

The plaintiff then presents its case, calling witnesses and introducing exhibits that support its positions. Each opposing party has the opportunity to object to exhibits and testimony, and to cross-examine witnesses. The judge rules on all objections and generally oversees the proceedings to assure that the trial is conducted properly. After the plaintiff rests its case, the defendant presents its defense, again by introducing exhibits and offering testimony from witnesses. The trial concludes with the plaintiff calling rebuttal witnesses, who are limited to rebutting testimony from the defendant's witnesses. Each side usually calls one or more experts to testify on the issues of infringement and validity (or invalidity), as well as on damages.

Closing Arguments

After the evidence has been presented, the parties make their closing arguments. Usually the plaintiff goes first, followed by the defendant. The plaintiff has the opportunity to reserve time for rebuttal if it chooses. In some jurisdictions, the defendant must go first and the plaintiff next. In this case, the plaintiff has the last word, and the defendant does not have any opportunity for rebuttal.

Closing arguments give each party the opportunity to highlight what they believe is the critical evidence in their favor, and attack the deficiencies

in their opponent's case. It is here that an observer would see the greatest geographic diversity in style and practice. Quite apart from the different styles of trial lawyers and judges across the country, jurors in different parts of the country expect different things from trials, and especially from closing arguments. Thus, an observer would see a very different "show" during a closing argument in the Eastern District of Texas than in the District of Maine.

After closing arguments are concluded, the judge reads the final jury instructions. These set forth the law to which the jury must apply the facts they determine during their deliberations.[45]

Thereafter, the jury retires to the jury room, with copies of the exhibits admitted into evidence, to decide the case.

Deliberation and Verdict

In most patent cases, the jury must answer detailed questions listed in a verdict form, called a special verdict.[46] These questions typically list the accused product(s) and the asserted claim(s) and require the jury to decide infringement and validity for each claim and accused product separately. If appropriate, the jury may also be asked to decide what damages, if any, are to be awarded the plaintiff and whether any infringement they may have found to exist was willful or not.

The jury deliberates as long as it takes to reach a unanimous decision on each question. During their deliberations, the jury may ask questions of the judge in writing, which the judge answers after consulting with the parties. Should the jury tell the judge that it cannot reach a unanimous verdict, the judge may provide additional instructions and return the jury to its deliberations to "try harder." Most juries reach a unanimous decision, which is recorded on the verdict form and read by the clerk in open court with the parties present.

Check Your Understanding

Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 2 | Section 2.6

Why do courts usually seat seven to nine jurors rather than six or twelve in most patent cases?

- ◯ You need an odd number of jurors to break a tie vote on the verdict.
- ◯ Six jurors won't be enough for a legal verdict if one is excused during trial, and twelve jurors will likely take too long to decide the case.

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Section 2.7: Post-Trial Procedures

After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Grasp the significance of equitable proceedings in the post-trial phase.
- Appreciate the ways in which findings of "inequitable conduct," "willfulness," and/or "exceptional case" can alter trial results.

Following the jury's decision, the court will set a schedule for any equitable proceedings required and for post-trial motions. Equitable proceedings deal with matters to be decided by the judge, not the jury. In terms of post-trial motions, the winning party will ask for entry of judgment.[47] The losing party will file a motion for judgment as a matter of law and usually also a motion for a new trial.[48]

Equitable Proceedings

Issues arise in most patent cases that must be decided by the judge and not the jury. Many of these are called "equitable" issues because they are left to the sound, equitable discretion of the court. The most common equitable issues are the defense of inequitable conduct and the affirmative claims of willfulness and exceptional case.

Inequitable Conduct

Misconduct by the patentee in dealing with the Patent and Trademark Office, through which the patentee or its attorney deceives or misleads the patent

examiner in an effort to persuade the examiner to grant the patent, was historically called "fraud on the Patent Office," but more recently has been renamed "inequitable conduct." A defendant can raise this issue as a defense, which if proven results in the patent being unenforceable—that is, the patentee is unable to enforce the patent or recover any damages for its infringement. Many different types of inequitable conduct have been found to render patents unenforceable, from outright fabrications of alleged evidence of unexpected results in the development of the invention, to hiding relevant prior art showing prior solutions to the problem solved by the patent, to failing to tell the patent examiner that another patent examiner had rejected a related application.

Most district courts defer ruling on inequitable conduct defenses until after the liability trial addressing infringement, validity, and damages. This is a commonsense attempt at efficiency because if the patent is found invalid or not infringed at trial, the inequitable conduct issues became moot. Only if the patent is found valid and infringed does the court need to hold a separate hearing to adduce evidence of alleged inequitable conduct. The court then decides whether such conduct had been proven, which is exceedingly rare. Nevertheless, because the consequences of such a finding essentially kill the patent, defendants assert inequitable conduct whenever possible in a final effort to avoid liability.

By 1988, the Federal Circuit Court of Appeals stated: "the habit of charging inequitable conduct in almost every major patent case has become an absolute plague."[49] In an effort to stem the spread of this plague, the Federal Circuit sought to restrict its use by holding that inequitable conduct must be established by clear and convincing evidence of deceptive intent. Gross negligence does not suffice and "does not of itself justify an inference of an intent to deceive."[50]

Nevertheless, the plague continued, leading a Federal Circuit judge to write:

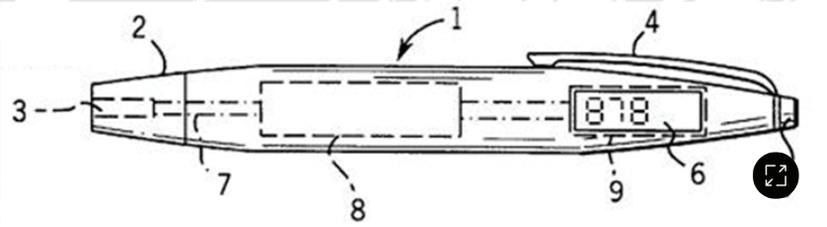
> "'Inequitable conduct' in patent practice means misconduct by the patent applicant in dealings with the patent examiner, whereby

the applicant or its attorney is found to have engaged in practices intended to deceive or mislead the examiner into granting the patent. It is a serious charge, and the effect is that an otherwise valid and invariably valuable patent is rendered unenforceable, for the charge arises only as a defense to patent infringement.

As this litigation-driven issue evolved, the law came to demand a perfection that few could attain in the complexities of patent practice. The result was not simply the elimination of fraudulently obtained patents, when such situations existed. The consequences were disproportionately pernicious, for they went far beyond punishing improper practice. The defense was grossly misused, and with inequitable conduct charged in almost every case in litigation, judges came to believe that every inventor and every patent attorney wallowed in sharp practice."[51]

Still the plague continued, leading Federal Circuit Judge Gajarsa in 2010 to then refer to it as a "pandemic."[52] Research showed that the percentage of patent cases in which inequitable conduct was charged grew from less than 5 percent in 2000 to 40 percent by 2009.[53]

Finally, on May 25, 2011, the Federal Circuit restricted the doctrine of inequitable conduct by changing the standard for materiality and clarifying the requirements for finding intent to deceive.[54] To find inequitable conduct, the court held that the party alleging unenforceability must prove a specific intent to deceive the USPTO by clear and convincing evidence. Moreover, the decision to deceive the USPTO must be knowing and deliberate. The court also clarified that district courts may not use a "sliding scale" to find intent. In other words, the Federal Circuit held it improper to find that a weak showing of intent was sufficient based on a strong showing that the information was material, or that a weak showing of materiality was sufficient based on a strong showing of intent. Although intent can be inferred to meet the clear and convincing evidence standard, specific intent to deceive must



The case of Therasense, Inc. v. Becton, Dickinson & Co. involved similarly designed glucose test strips. The Court also found that patent 5,820,551 (pictured above) was unenforceable due to inequitable conduct for failing to submit briefs from a case with the European Patent Office regarding the same patent. Image used under public domain.

be "the single most reasonable inference able to be drawn from the evidence."

Regarding materiality, the court required a "but-for materiality" standard. In other words, the standard for materiality now requires that "but for" the alleged deception, the USPTO would not have allowed the claim. Further, "[i]n making this patentability determination, the court should apply the preponderance of the evidence standard and give claims their broadest reasonable construction." The court also recognized an exception to the requirement for but-for materiality, finding that "[w]hen the patentee has engaged in affirmative acts of egregious misconduct, such as the filing of an unmistakably false affidavit, the misconduct is material."

The number of successful inequitable conduct defenses asserted has plummeted due to the strict new requirements for pleading and proving inequitable conduct imposed by the *Therasense* decision. District courts are dispensing with many allegations of inequitable conduct now at the pleading stage, eliminating the need for separate hearings on inequitable conduct issues.

Misuse of a patent is sometimes treated as a form of inequitable conduct, but it is more commonly treated as a separate affirmative defense. The elements of misuse are either a violation of antitrust laws or an effort to expand the scope or term of a patent beyond appropriate limits. For example, it is patent misuse for a patentee to file suit against products of a defendant that are far beyond the proper scope of any claims of the patentee's patent, or to seek damages or an injunction beyond the expiration of

the patent. Often such unreasonable demands are accompanied by threats to the defendant's customers. If the misuse is proved, the patentee could be barred from recovering any damages until it has "purged" the misuse by abandoning its unreasonable assertions and dissipating any negative effects they caused.

Willfulness

If the jury (or judge, in a bench trial) finds that the asserted patent has been infringed, it is often asked to determine whether such infringement was "willful." A finding of willful infringement allows the judge to award enhanced damages under 35 U.S.C. § 284, which provides in relevant part that the court may increase the damages award by up to three times the amount found. This is a potent consequence of a showing that a defendant's infringement was willful.

The standard for showing willfulness has evolved over the years, but in 2007, the Federal Circuit significantly altered the standard governing willful infringement by requiring the patentee to prove that (1) the accused infringer "acted despite an objectively high likelihood that its actions constituted infringement of a valid patent," and (2) the "objectively defined risk . . . was either known or so obvious that it should have been known to the accused infringer." [55] The first prong of this test is objective, whereas the second prong is subjective and involves the accused infringer's actual state of mind. Each prong requires that the infringer knew the patent existed at the time it infringed.

Because an infringer cannot be shown to have willfully infringed if it did not know the patent existed, some companies have adopted a "head in the sand" approach to others' patents. This practice is thought to make sense when the field is very crowded (i.e., there are many patents owned by different patentees covering many different aspects of a product or service) because trying to uncover all the potentially relevant patents that could be asserted against a new product or service is extremely costly, if not impossible. This practice is used most frequently

by large companies that can afford to deal with a patent infringement lawsuit should one be filed. Small companies and entrepreneurs, especially in emerging fields, often take great care to search for and work around any existing patents that might be close to their new product or service because they can ill afford patent litigation. Of course, searching for potentially troublesome patents and trying to avoid them is no guarantee of not getting sued. Not only are there more than two million patents in force,[56] but creative patentees are not above taking a patent that was thought to cover one product and arguing it is broad enough to cover what a new market entrant has introduced.

In 2012, the Federal Circuit again addressed the willfulness standard, and adjusted it again.[57] With regard to the objective prong of the willful infringement test, the Federal Circuit concluded:

> "We believe that the court is in the best position for making the determination of reasonableness. This court therefore holds that the objective determination of recklessness, even though predicated on underlying mixed questions of law and fact, is best decided by the judge as a question of law subject to de novo review."

This further restricts the opportunity for a patentee to prove that a defendant's infringement was willful. The patentee must first convince the district court that the defendant acted despite an objectively high likelihood that its actions constituted infringement of a valid patent. Only after that will the patentee be able to present evidence of the defendant's alleged subjective intent to the jury in an effort to convince the jury that the infringement was willful.

Patentees preferred the pre-*Bard* opportunity to present all of their willfulness evidence to the jury during the liability trial. They wanted this ability because they believed, probably correctly, that it helped the jury conclude not only that the defendant was a "bad actor" who willfully ignored the patentee's rights, but also bolstered the underlying issue of infringement itself. Post-*Bard*,

the patentee can only present willfulness evidence if it is able to convince a more dispassionate judge that the defendant acted objectively recklessly, which is a higher hurdle to overcome.

If the patentee convinces the judge on the objective prong, and the jury on the subjective prong, resulting in a jury verdict of willful infringement, the issue of enhanced damages passes back to the court for determination after the trial.

Because the *Bard* case was decided in mid-2012, little empirical evidence exists on its effect on the frequency with which significant enhanced damages are awarded by the courts. However, even before *Bard*, the evidence suggests that such awards were falling. Before the Seagate restrictions were imposed in 2007, 81.4 percent of cases finding willful infringement resulted in an award of enhanced damages, but after Seagate, that number fell to 54.9 percent.[59]

Factors Considered for Enhanced Damages

(1) "whether the infringer deliberately copied the ideas or design of another"

(2) "whether the infringer, when he knew of the other's patent protection, investigated the scope of the patent and formed a good-faith belief that it was invalid or that it was not infringed"

(3) "the infringer's behavior as a party to the litigation"

(4) the accused infringer's "size and financial condition"

(5) the "[c]loseness of the infringement"

(6) the "[d]uration of [infringer]'s misconduct"

(7) whether the infringer took any "[r]emedial action"

(8) whether the infringer had a "motivation [to] harm" the patentee

(9) whether the infringer "attempted to conceal its misconduct"[58]

Exceptional Case

Courts have discretion to award reasonable attorneys' fees in patent infringement cases that are deemed "exceptional."[60] The Federal Circuit has referred to this provision as a deterrent to bringing of clearly unwarranted suits on invalid or unenforceable patents.[61]

Normally, the losing party is not liable to pay the winner's attorneys' fees—a practice referred to as the "American

Rule." The rationale for this is that any party should be able to approach the court for relief without the fear that if he or she is unsuccessful, he or she will be left to pay not only his or her own attorney but the adversary's attorney as well. Thus, the provision of the Patent Act that permits an award of attorneys' fees is an exception to the rule that each party bears its own costs in litigation.

Congress said that it intended the rule allowing an award of attorneys' fees to be applied sparingly and "that recovery of attorneys' fees will not become an ordinary thing in patent suits.[62] The Federal Circuit repeatedly limited district court discretion to award attorneys' fees to only those cases in which the district court found clear and convincing evidence of bad faith or at least gross negligence by the losing party in bringing or maintaining the suit, and any such determination was reviewable *de novo* on appeal.[63] But in April 2014, the Supreme Court struck down these restrictive Federal Circuit interpretations and held:

> "[A]n 'exceptional' case is simply one that stands out from the others with respect to the substantive strength of a party's litigating position (considering both the governing law and the facts of the case) or the unreasonable manner in which the case was litigated. District courts may determine whether a case is 'exceptional' in the case-by-case exercise of their discretion, considering the totality of the circumstances [and without any] precise rule or formula for making these determinations."

In a companion case, the Supreme Court also rejected the rule that exceptional case determinations should be reviewed *de novo* on appeal.[64]

There are increasing calls for a change to the American Rule, to require losing parties to pay the winner's attorneys' fee. The principal purpose of such a change would be to deter so-called "patent trolls," entities that acquire patents for the sole purpose of making money by filing lawsuits, threatening crippling litigation expenses, and

demanding settlements at or slightly more than the cost of litigation.[65] It is questionable whether such a change would in fact deter the so-called trolls or instead preclude small entities and entrepreneurs from pursuing legitimate claims due to the uncertainty of the outcome of any lawsuit. Even the most "bulletproof" patent can be subject to unexpected challenges from previously undiscovered prior art or the vagaries of a jury decision favoring the defendant for reasons other than the merits. Enforcing a patent requires resources, or the availability of a contingency fee lawyer willing to take the outsized costs, and risks that patent litigation can entail. Thus, shifting the responsibility for the winner's attorneys' fees to the losing party could effectively preclude small entities and individuals from even filing a lawsuit. The 2014 Supreme Court's *Octane Fitness* and *Highmark* cases, and how district courts exercise their newly expanded discretion in finding a patent case exception under 35 U.S.C. § 285, may dissuade Congress from enacting a "loser pays" exception for patent cases.

Entry of Judgment

The winning party seeks entry of a judgment that grants it the relief to which it is entitled, based on the jury's verdict and the rulings of the court. First, the judgment will declare who the winning party is. Then, it will set forth the relief or remedies to which the winning party is entitled. The relief may include damages, as awarded by the jury and supplemented by the court if there was a timing difference in the calculation of the damages by the jury and the date on which they are finally awarded. A winning patentee is also entitled to prejudgment interest on the damage award, calculated at the rate specified by law, to compensate for the time value of money lost due to the delay in obtaining damages. The judgment may also set forth the postjudgment interest due, for any delay between the entry of the judgment and the payment of the award to the patentee by the losing parties.

A successful patentee may also be entitled to injunctive relief, barring further sales of the

infringing product or service. This is the most potent relief available to patentees. Prior to 2006, it was presumed that a patentee who proved patent infringement was irreparably injured and entitled to an automatic injunction. But in 2006, the Supreme Court rejected the presumption and ruled that, in all other kinds of cases, a successful patentee is required to prove each of the following requirements for injunctive relief: (1) that it has suffered an irreparable injury; (2) that remedies available at law are inadequate to compensate for that injury; (3) that considering the balance of hardships between the plaintiff and defendant, a remedy in equity is warranted; (4) that the public interest would not be disserved by a permanent injunction.[66]

Usually, patentees who are competitors of the infringer can meet these requirements. However, patentees who are not competitors of the infringer are usually unsuccessful in convincing courts that they are entitled to injunctive relief, and are left with only money damages (usually an ongoing reasonable royalty) to compensate for future infringement. This removes the most serious risk an alleged infringer faces—being barred from the market—making fighting cases through trial more palatable than before. This new rule from the Supreme Court has driven many plaintiffs out of federal court and into the International Trade Commission (ITC), when the allegedly infringing products are imported, because the ITC issues exclusion orders and cease and desist orders (roughly equivalent to federal court injunctions barring further sales) without regard to the requirements the Supreme Court laid down in the *eBay* decision.[67]

Motion for Judgment as a Matter of Law

Called a "JMOL" motion, the premise of a motion for judgment as a matter of law is that the jury did not have a legally sufficient evidentiary basis for deciding the case as it did, and the court should intervene and decide the case in favor of the party moving for the JMOL. The moving party must explain in detail what legally required evidence is

missing from the trial record. The opposing party (i.e., the party that won the jury verdict) then has the opportunity to identify in the trial record where the allegedly missing evidence is found, and the judge decides who is correct. The court must consider the evidence in the light most favorable to the nonmoving party. Thus, most JMOL motions fail. But the losing party always files such a motion because it is a chance to challenge the jury's verdict and avoid the remedies the winning party is demanding.

Motion for a New Trial

JMOL motions are usually accompanied by a motion for a new trial, arguing that the jury's verdict was against the manifest weight of the evidence or the jury's verdict was grossly inadequate or excessive.[68] Other grounds also exist, such as newly discovered evidence that could not have reasonably been discovered earlier.

The decision to grant or deny a new trial rests with the sound discretion of the judge, who typically presided during the trial and has a keen understanding of the evidence that was introduced and whether the jury's verdict was against the weight of that evidence. The court's decision is not whether the court would have decided the case the same way, but whether there is sufficient evidence in the record to support the jury's verdict. The court must view the evidence in the light most favorable to the nonmoving party. Thus, most new trial motions, like most JMOLs, are unsuccessful.

Check Your Understanding

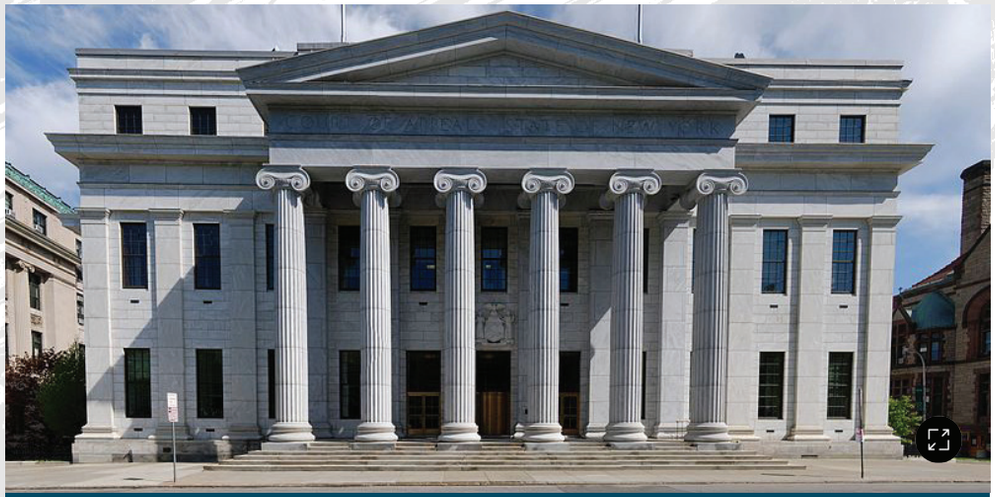
Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 4 | Section 2.7

Which of the following is the definition of inequitable conduct?

- ◯ Deceiving or misleading the patent office to grant a patent
- ◯ Deceiving or misleading a jury during opening arguments
- ◯ Deceiving or misleading the opposing party during the discovery phase

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Section 2.8: Appeals



After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Understand what happens after a jury verdict is entered.
- Appreciate the chances of success of appeals based on fact versus legal issues.

Once the post-trial motions are decided and the judgment entered, the losing party may appeal to the Federal Circuit Court of Appeals. This is the one federal appellate court in the United States that hears all appealed cases involving patent disputes. Almost all patent cases that conclude with a trial, or after a decision on summary judgment, are appealed. This is partly because the cost of an appeal is orders of magnitude less than the case up to that point (e.g., tens or hundreds of thousands of dollars vs. hundreds of thousands or millions of dollars). In addition, overall the Federal Circuit affirms in full less than 60 percent of the patent cases it decides on the merits.[69] Thus, it is well worth it for the losing party to pursue an appeal, because overall it has a 40+ percent chance of partial or full relief from the judgment below. Of course, the reversal rate varies by the nature of the issues before the Federal Circuit and the standard of review the court applies. Legal issues (such as claim construction, summary judgment, and jury instructions) are reviewed *de novo*, without deference to the district court's or jury's decision. This makes it much more likely that the Federal Circuit will reverse a decision because it need not give any deference to the decision of the district court. Fact issues (like infringement, many

aspects of validity, and damages) are reviewed on a less flexible standard (i.e., does substantial evidence support the decision), such that the Federal Circuit (like the district court) is not free to substitute its own judgment for that of the jury. Evidentiary rulings, and other issues associated with how the trial was conducted are reviewed under the least flexible standard of review—abuse of discretion. It is rare that the Federal Circuit finds that a district court abused its discretion.[70]

For example, the Federal Circuit reverses claim construction decisions at a rate nearly twice as high as decisions without claim construction issues (32 percent vs. 18 percent).[71] It is not surprising, then, that most appeals to the Federal Circuit focus at least in part on claim construction as a basis for the appeal.

Appeals at the Federal Circuit are usually resolved within 18–24 months. Oral argument is usually scheduled within a year, depending on how much time the parties take to file their appeal briefs. Oral argument is requested and granted in almost all patent appeals. The argument occurs in the Federal Circuit courthouse in Washington, D.C., before a panel of three judges, although yearly the Federal Circuit travels to other cities to hear arguments at local law schools, which allows students, local practitioners, and the public to attend more easily. The parties are typically given 15 minutes per side to make their arguments, and after the argument, the court renders a written decision within 3–6 months.

Check Your Understanding

Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 1 | Section 2.8

Which of the following explain why patent infringement verdicts are almost always appealed?

- ◯ The cost of an appeal is orders of magnitude less than the cost of the trial itself.
- ◯ Legal issues such as claim construction are reviewed *de novo*—meaning, without regard to the previous trial's rulings.
- ◯ The U.S. Court for the Federal Circuit, the appeals court, affirms in full less than 60 percent of the patent cases it decides on the merits.
- ◯ All of the above

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Section 2.9: Litigation Alternatives

After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Understand the various alternative methods of dispute resolution.
- tinguish the pros and cons of arbitration versus mediation.

The high cost, delay, and disruption of litigation motivate many adversaries to seek alternatives to litigation to resolve their disputes. Mediation and arbitration are two popular alternative dispute resolution (ADR) methodologies. A thriving business exists in the United States providing adversaries the resources to conduct mediations or arbitrations. Retired or former judges or lawyers are available to serve as mediators or arbitrators.

ADR is an increasingly popular way to resolve disputes because it is often faster, less expensive, and private, as compared with the public lawsuit procedures outlined above. The interactions among the parties and the mediators/arbitrators can be kept confidential, as can any settlements reached. Confidentiality is a driving force behind ADR.

Mediation

Mediation is simply an exchange between adversaries overseen (i.e., "mediated") by an individual with expertise and/or training in helping parties reach agreement. Often, the mediator will require the parties to submit their positions and relevant documents in a pre-mediation brief. Usually, each pre-mediation brief

is confidential and only seen by the mediator and the party submitting it (i.e., the opposing party does not see the other side's mediation brief). The mediator will review the materials submitted and then set a date for the parties to meet with the mediator, usually in the mediator's offices or a neutral location (such as a hotel conference room). Each party commits to bring to the mediation one or more people with the authority to settle, so that the people at the mediation can discuss the dispute and reach an agreement settling it without having to seek approval from others.

At the mediation, the mediator typically starts by meeting with all the parties together, and reviews the dispute and the issues that require settlement. The mediator will then meet with each party separately, engaging in "shuttle diplomacy," in an attempt to bring the parties to a common middle ground. Occasionally, when it may appear that the parties' respective positions leave a gap between them, the mediator may make a "mediator's proposal" that tries to bridge that gap. If the parties agree, typically a written agreement will be signed before they end the mediation—which may be a list of terms for later fleshing out in a full agreement or an actual final settlement agreement. Because anything left to later discussion can give rise to further disputes, most mediators try to get the parties to a full, signed agreement before they depart the mediation.

Perhaps surprisingly to some, mediation often succeeds, if not the first time, then weeks or months later, after the parties have a chance to think things through. Mediations can be conducted while litigation is pending, or before litigation is filed. In the latter case, often the parties will sign a "standstill agreement" that promises that neither will file a lawsuit against the other on the subject matter of the mediation until they agree the mediation has failed.

District courts and the Federal Circuit often have mediation programs that attempt to help the parties resolve their disputes voluntarily. Increased attention is given to these programs as the resources of the courts have dwindled and

the caseloads increased because each successful mediation is one less case that requires the resources of the court.

Arbitration

The principal difference between mediation and arbitration is decisiveness. Mediations result in settlements only if all parties agree to a resolution. In most arbitrations (so-called "binding arbitrations"), the parties agree to be bound by the decision of the arbitrator(s). There is a nonbinding version of arbitration, where the parties ask the arbitrator(s) to render a decision, but do not agree to be bound by it. In practice, these are actually mediations because they result in a settlement only if all parties agree to the result. Such nonbinding arbitrations are most often used when the parties have attempted to reach a mediated settlement but reach an impasse on one or more critical issues. They may then agree to submit those impasses to nonbinding arbitration, where one or more arbitrators (usually experts on the subject matter of the impasse issues) evaluate the facts, as presented by the parties, and render a decision that the parties can review to understand how an impartial third party looks at the issues. This often helps the parties craft a mediated settlement on their own.

Most arbitrations are binding, and resemble lawsuits and trials more than mediations. The parties may agree to submit their dispute to a single arbitrator (like a retired judge), but most often a panel of three arbitrators is appointed to hear the case. The parties may agree on all three arbitrators, drawn from a list of suitable candidates provided by the American Arbitration Association[72] or some other entity in the arbitration business, or each party selects one arbitrator and those two arbitrators pick the third.

The parties agree on the rules that govern the arbitration, which can limit discovery, evidence, witnesses, and trial time, in whatever manner the parties agree. Once the parties agree on the rules,

the arbitration is controlled by the arbitration panel, which enforces the rules and renders a binding decision. Usually, arbitration decisions are not appealable (except for gross malfeasance by the arbitrators), but the parties can provide for appeal rights if they choose. But prolonging the resolution of the dispute by allowing an appeal is contrary to the cost and time-savings objectives of most arbitrations.

Arbitrations have become particularly popular for resolving patent disputes that cross international borders and involve multiple patents issued by different countries. No one court can resolve such disputes, so international arbitration, with arbitrators expert in different countries' laws can fill the gap.

Check Your Understanding

Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 1 | Section 2.9

As an alternative to litigation, mediation is different from arbitration in what way?

- ◯ Mediations result in settlements only if both parties agree.
- ◯ In arbitrations, the parties are bound by the decision of the arbitrator.
- ◯ Both of these are accurate.

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Section 2.10: Patent Trolls and Efforts to Thwart Them

After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Appreciate the threat posed by patent trolls to innocent businesses.
- Understand the difference between legitimate patent holders enforcing their rights and extortionist patent trolls who try to game the legal system.

Starting in the 1990s, but increasing in the new millennium, a type of plaintiff with a particular litigation and settlement strategy gained notoriety in the United States—the so-called "patent troll." By 2012, the majority of patent suits were brought not by businesses making products covered by patents they owned and seeking to halt competitors believed to be infringing their patents, or even by small entities and entrepreneurs pursuing legitimate claims, but instead by what some detractors call "patent trolls" (after the mythical creatures that demanded payment for safe passage over a bridge).[73] Although some have more recently attempted to discern a difference between what they consider "good" and "bad" trolls by labeling the former "non-practicing entities" (NPEs) or "patent monetization entities" (PMEs), for the purposes of this section, we will refer to such entities as trolls.

As plaintiffs, trolls seek to take advantage of the fact that U.S. patent litigation costs have become so high that many defendants are willing to pay to make such cases go away. Trolls file lawsuits not to protect a business from an infringing competitor, but to derive settlement

revenue from defendants willing to settle for less than litigation costs. Trolls often acquire patents of ambiguous scope and questionable value, file suit against multiple defendants, and rely on the presumption of validity accorded all issued patents to extract settlements for less than it would cost any one defendant to defend against the infringement claim. Because trolls have few documents other than the patents and their file histories, and even fewer employees, they are not subject to the outsized expense of discovery that a commercial business with warehouses of documents and scores of employees faces in patent litigation. Because discovery costs for such defendants are so much greater than for troll plaintiffs, defendants feel pressure to settle for less than the cost of litigation, lining the pockets of trolls. Such activities in the aggregate have proven very profitable for trolls, and expensive for defendants.

Spurred by target companies, the America Invents Act legislation in 2011 (see infra, Section X.3.3) included a change in rules governing the joinder of parties, stating:

> "...accused infringers may not be joined in one action as defendants or counterclaim defendants, or have their actions consolidated for trial, based solely on allegations that they each have infringed the patent or patents in suit."

This eliminated a tool of trolls—namely, filing a single case against scores or even hundreds of alleged infringers.[74] However, trolls simply adapted by filing multiple lawsuits and seeking consolidation for discovery, which increases their costs somewhat but avoids the purpose of the change.

More recently, politicians have scrambled to propose a myriad of different legislative fixes, from shifting the cost of unsuccessful litigation to plaintiffs, to staying litigation against customers of another's product until a suit against the manufacturer is concluded.[75] Even President Obama has become involved, asserting his administration's own views for a solution.[76]

Not everyone thinks legislation is appropriate, or even necessary. A panel at Yale Law School in

April 2013 yielded decidedly mixed views.[77] And then Chief Judge Rader of the Federal Circuit Court of Appeals coauthored an op-ed piece in the *New York Times*, recommending that judges should use 35 U.S.C. §285 to foil patent trolls by imposing costs and sanctions at the judicial level.[78] But again, not everyone thinks that is realistic.[79] The Supreme Court embraced Judge Rader's recommendation in its 2014 decisions in *Octane Fitness* and *Highmark*, significantly broadening the district court's discretion in finding a case exceptional and awarding attorneys' fees. (See *supra*, Section 2.7, "Exceptional Case.") But even with such expanded discretion and power, trial judges cannot rule on the merits of a case without some basis for it, and that requires money spent by defendants. Thus, it is not easy for a district court judge to stop what trolls rely upon, namely the use of litigation expense and leverage to extract settlements. Getting to the merits of the claims takes time and significant expense—often more than the cost to settle, with no assurance as to outcome.

As of early 2015, the problem of trolls remains a subject of widespread discussion and debate. Legislation that was proposed in 2014 to address the problem is stalled, and although new legislation is still being discussed, many experts believe that the state and federal actions already taken to rein in abusive patent litigation—including important U.S. Supreme Court decisions in 2015 regarding software patentability and fee-shifting in exceptional cases—make it less likely that new legislation will be introduced any time soon.

District courts, for example, have already begun applying the standards recently announced by the Supreme Court in *Octane Fitness* and *Highmark*, and may be more willing to make abusive patent litigants pay attorneys' fees. Time will tell if the new fee-award judicial regime will lessen the pressure to implement legislation against abusive litigants. The Eastern District of Texas, one of the most popular venues for patent litigation in the United States, has added a new Track B docket, which specifically addresses a number of proposals considered by Congress,

including early disclosure of certain information, such as licensing information, as well as very early disclosure of both the damages sought and the method of calculating those damage.[80]

Meanwhile, a growing number of state legislatures and state attorneys general have also begun using consumer protection laws to clamp down on patent trolls.[81] And the White House in 2014 issued a series of Executive Orders intended to further curb patent litigation abuse and strengthen the patent system.[82]

Finally, a movement is taking hold within the patent licensing industry itself to develop a voluntary code of conduct or standards of ethical behavior. Companies like Conversant and Dominion Harbor Group have committed themselves publicly to a set of ethical guidelines for patent licensing, and other companies are also considering doing so.[83] The Licensing Executives Society of the U.S. and Canada (LES), the industry's principal professional organization, is also developing a set of "best practice" guidelines for ethical patent licensing activity.

The importance of patents to America's economic prosperity and competitiveness ensures that competing interests will continue to strive for an advantage commercially, legislatively, and judicially. Change will continue after the publication of this chapter. The status quo does not last long in our field.

Check Your Understanding

Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 1 | Section 2.10

Which of the following is the definition of a "patent troll"?

- ◯ A patent owner who licenses his patents rather than makes or sells products
- ◯ A patent owner whose main source of revenue is patent litigation
- ◯ A patent owner whose main source of revenue is "nuisance settlements" for less than the cost of litigation

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

CHAPTER

3

COPYRIGHT BASICS

Chapter Summary

A copyright grants the author of an original literary or other creative work certain exclusive rights over the reproduction, distribution, performance, or display of that work. However, under certain conditions, others may use some portions of a copyrighted work under "fair use" provisions. There are important differences between the protections given to copyright owners and those granted to patent owners.

Key Terms

Statute of Anne, *work for hire*, *infringement*, *Copyright Act of 1976*, *No Electronic Theft Act of 1997*

Section 3.1: The Basics of Copyright

After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Understand the theoretical and legal underpinnings of copyright.
- Appreciate the important differences between copyrights and patents.

A copyright is an intellectual property right granted by a government to the author of an original literary, dramatic, musical, artistic, or other eligible creative work that gives him or her the exclusive right to control how the work is published, reproduced, performed, or displayed—as well as whether or not derivative works (e.g., a movie version of a novel) may be produced.

In the United States, the legal foundation for copyright is set forth, along with that for patents, in Article 1, Section 8, Clause 8 of the U.S. Constitution. This clause gives Congress the authority to "promote the progress of Science and useful Arts, by securing for limited times to authors and inventors the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries."[1]

Congress and the courts have interpreted the terms "authors" and "writings" very broadly so as to include the creators of a wide variety of artistic and intellectual works. Title 17 of the United States Code authorizes the grant of a copyright to the authors of "original works of authorship"—including literary works, dramatic works, choreographic works, graphic

works, audiovisual works, sound recordings, and architectural works. In most cases, a copyright lasts for the life of the author plus 70 years.

How to Obtain a Copyright

In America, the copyright system is administered by the U.S. Copyright Office, which is part of the Library of Congress and maintains a registry of copyrighted works. Interestingly, registration is not required to obtain a copyright. It is automatically granted to an author at the moment of creation—i.e., as soon as his or her work is expressed in a tangible form that allows it to be seen or copied, such as being written on paper or on a computer, or recorded as video or audio. Registration is only required if a copyright holder wants to initiate a copyright infringement suit in federal court.

Any work, even those by amateur artists, are protected by copyright laws. Your work is protected by copyright laws as soon as you create it. No filing necessary! Image by Faris Algosaibi, used under CC-BY 2.0 via flickr.

Copyrights vs. Patents

Unlike the case with patents, the United States never developed an examination system for determining whether or not a creative work merits copyright protection. That's because while the validity of an invention can be evaluated fairly objectively based on its utility, novelty, and non-obviousness, the merit of any cultural work is a far

more subjective affair, as demonstrated by the frequency with which publishers reject novels that later go on to become literary classics.

What the patent and copyright systems share, however, is the recognition that unless the inherent property rights of inventors and authors to their creations are protected, the wellsprings of creation and productivity would be negatively affected by the reduced incentive. Both systems also share the public policy goal of marshaling the benefits of individual creativity—whether technological, as in the case of inventions, or cultural, as in literary works—to the public good so that these promote the progress of the nation and the "general welfare" of its citizens.

How to promote that general welfare, however, was approached very differently by the Founders in the case of patents than it was with copyright.

Supreme Court Justice Henry Baldwin stated that the intention of patent law was "to benefit the inventor, in the belief that maximizing individual welfare leads to maximum social welfare." Image used under public domain, via Wikimedia Commons.

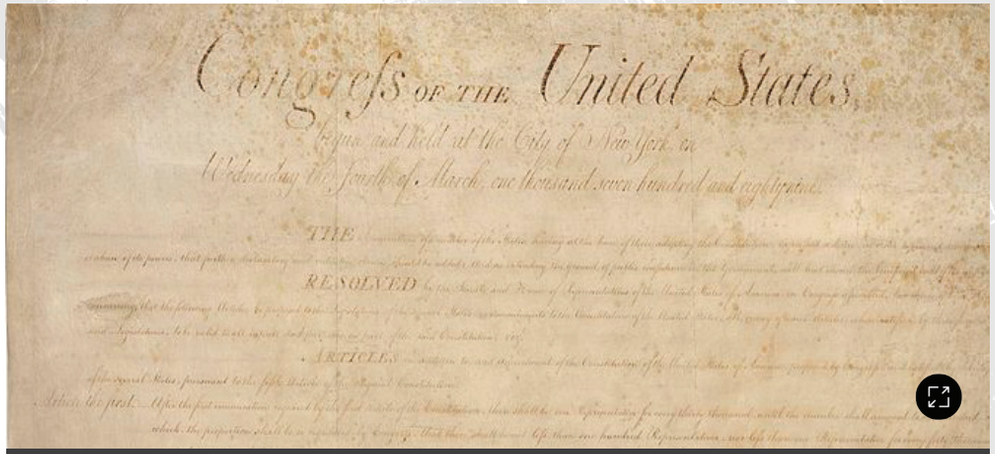
The explicit intention of patent law, explained Supreme Court Justice Henry Baldwin in *Whitney v. Emmett* (1831), was "to benefit the inventor, in the belief that maximizing individual welfare leads to maximum social welfare." Inventors, after all, created tools that enabled the new nation to free itself from dependency on foreign imports and develop industries of its own. Whatever incentives were needed to prod these technologically creative people to

take on the challenge and succeed were well worth the bargain (see Chapter 1).

The Rights of Authors and the Public Interest

When it came to copyright, however, the rights of authors were thought to conflict with those of the public to a far greater extent. "Democratic values emphasized equal and widespread access to learning and the importance of information flows for maintaining political freedom, whereas strong copyrights impinged on the fullest attainment of these objectives," notes Bowdoin College historian Zorina Khan, author of *The Democratization of Invention: Patents and Copyright in American Economic Development*, which won the Alice Hanson Jones prize for outstanding work in economic history in 2005.[2]

As an example, a copyright owner's right to prevent unauthorized use of his work may at times be constrained by the public's First Amendment right of free speech—hence the doctrine of "fair use" (more on this later).


Congress of the United States,
begun and held at the City of New-York, on
Wednesday the fourth of March, one thousand seven hundred and eighty-nine.
THE
RESOLVED
ARTICLES

As a part of the U.S. Constitution, the First Amendment protects a person's right of free speech, which can often oppose a copyright owner's right to protect his or her own work. Used under public domain, via Wikimedia Commons.

It was believed that a strategy of strong patent rights but weaker copyrights also better reflected the differing incentives that motivated inventors and authors. Inventors, many felt, were driven primarily by economic gain, whereas authors were often interested as much in the prospect of celebrity and reputation as they were in monetary reward.

Supreme Court Justice John McLean emphasized that this distinction between patents and copyrights exists in the structure of U.S. intellectual property law itself. In Wheaton v. Peters (1834), the first high court ruling on copyright, he wrote:

> "It has been argued at the bar that as the promotion of the progress of science and the useful arts is here united in the same clause in the Constitution, the rights of authors and inventors were considered as standing on the same footing. But this, I think, is a non-sequitur … for when Congress came to execute this power by legislation, the subjects are kept distinct and very different provisions are made respecting them."[3]

To understand why the Founders gave greater weight to the public domain in copyright law than they did in patent law, it's important to examine the origin and development of early copyright systems and their political and economic impact on society.

Check Your Understanding

Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 8 | Section 3.1

A copyright gives authors, artists, dramatists, architects, and other artistic creators the exclusive right to control what?

- ◯ How their work is reproduced, distributed, performed, or displayed
- ◯ How much money they will make from their work
- ◯ Whether or not the work becomes a classic in art, theater, or literature

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Section 3.2: Early Copyright Systems

After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Understand the role early copyright systems played in enforcing monopolies.
- Appreciate the degree to which authors' rights were ignored at that time.

As was the case with patents, the granting of book privileges (now called copyrights) began in the Republic of Venice in the fifteenth century. Prior to that, printed books were considered part of the public domain and anyone could copy or reproduce them. But in 1492—the same year Columbus sailed the Santa Maria to the New World—a Milanese author named Donatus Bossius petitioned the sixth duke of Milan, Gian Galeazzo Sforza, for an exclusive privilege for his book, arguing that without such a privilege he would be unjustly deprived of the fruit of his effort. He was granted a ten-year privilege, and the practice soon spread throughout Europe.

The French copyright system was introduced in 1498. Exclusive rights to not only books but also translations, maps, type designs, engravings, and artwork were granted by the monarch for periods initially ranging from two to ten years. There were stipulations attached to such grants, sometimes including even price controls on the published works.

It is important to realize, however, that authorship was not required for the granting of early copyrights. In fact, the early copyright systems of Europe more

often than not enabled printers and publishers to establish quite effective monopolies over the commerce in books, the arts, and other cultural works that limited the diffusion of culture in society. The owners of such privileges may have waxed poetic about "droit d'auteur" (authors' rights), but this was often just a way of deflecting public criticism of their monopolistic power and superprofits.

Indeed, this was most glaringly revealed in the grant of exclusive privileges to French opera. According to a 1929 book by Henry Prunières,[4] Louis XIV in 1669 granted a perpetual monopoly over all operatic performances in France to Jean-Baptiste Lully, the director of the Paris Opera. Lully also gained sole publication rights to opera librettos, and sold shares in the rights to printers. He then used his copyright privilege to limit the number of musicians who could perform outside the Paris Opera and to suppress competitors like the Comédie Francaise. In the end, Lully became fabulously rich and bequeathed his monopoly rights to his heirs.

Not exactly your starving artist asking merely to enjoy the fruits of his work.

Early copyright systems also quickly evolved into means of censorship and surveillance of the population's reading habits. The 1566 Edict of Moulins in France, for example,

Slide Show

Slide shows available in free iBooks version, click to download.

This photo is of the Palace of Versailles in France, used under CC BY 2.0.

Early Copyright Systems in Europe

French Copyright The French copyright system, introduced in 1498, granted exclusive rights to books, translations, maps, type designs, engravings, and artwork by the monarch for periods initially ranging from two to ten years.

required that any new book had to be approved and licensed by the Crown. Manuscripts first had to be read and approved by a censor before a permit was granted to print a book. The permit could be revoked if officials or influential citizens later complained about the book's content.

Interestingly, a decree in 1777 enabled authors who did not sell off their rights to gain a copyright in perpetuity. But like the A. J. Liebling quote about freedom of the press belonging only to those with enough wealth to own one, so, too, were authors' inalienable rights often just a lofty theory trumped by harsh economic reality. Because few authors had the capital required to print a book, they usually sold off their "exclusive rights" to commercial publishers.

Much the same situation prevailed in the English copyright system, where copyright law began as a monopoly grant to benefit favored guilds and as a means to censor public opinion on behalf of the Crown.

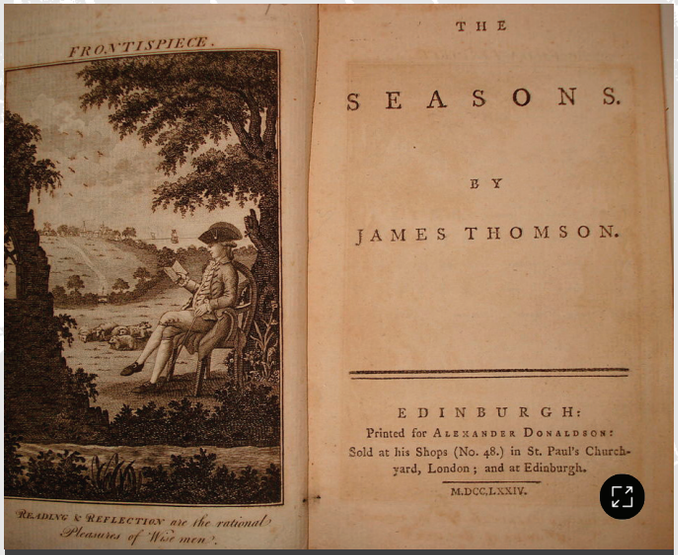
The Statute of Anne

In 1557, the Worshipful Company of Stationers was granted a royal privilege that enabled it to control the book trade for the next 150 years. Only in 1709 did a new copyright statute, the **Statute of Anne**, begin to erode the monopolistic power of the Stationers Company. It stipulated that a copyright could be obtained by anyone, and instead of a perpetual right, the term was limited to 14 years with the right to renew for one additional 14-year term. According to Professor John Feather of Loughborough University in Britain, the statute "wholly ignored the authors of books, and certainly was not intended to confer any additional rights on them."[5]

Assessing early European copyright systems as a whole, Zorina Khan observes that they "resulted in 'odious monopolies,' higher prices and greater scarcity, large transfers [of money] to officials of the Crown and their allies, and pervasive censorship [while it also] disadvantaged smaller book producers, provincial publishers, and the academic and broader community."[6]

It wasn't until 1774 in England, in the landmark case *Donaldson v. Beckett*, that a court ruled that authors have a fundamental right to their writings—at least until publication, after which the Statute of Anne still gave the rights to the publishers. The immediate claim in the case was whether Scottish bookseller Alexander Donaldson had acted as a pirate when he published an edition of James Thomson's *The Seasons*, a work for which Thomas Beckett and other London booksellers claimed the copyright. But the larger principle at issue was whether copyright was a limited right granted by government under the Statute of Anne, or a common law right of publishers that existed in perpetuity despite the limitations of the statute.

The case would prove pivotal in deciding not only the future of publishing, but also of authors, in whose name the London publishers claimed to be acting. The court took the claim of authors' rights further than the publishers ever intended, however. It reaffirmed the limited statutory nature of copyright and also recognized that authors—with the decline of patronage, authors were only then emerging as independent professionals writing for a mass market of book buyers—were the true originators and proprietors of the product of their own creative labors.



The case Donaldson v. Beckett, involving Thomson's The Seasons, shaped future copyright laws in England. Image used under public domain via Wikimedia Commons.

As Michel Foucault would put it nearly two centuries later,

> "The coming into being of the notion of 'author' constitutes the privileged moment of individualization in the history of ideas, knowledge, literature, philosophy, and science."

In the century after *Donaldson v. Beckett*, European copyright systems expanded to include sheet music, maps, design, sculpture, and even lectures. The doctrines of "work for hire" and "fair use" would emerge (more on these later), but the law would still remain largely arbitrary, confused, and frequently injurious to the public until late in the nineteenth century.

However, the process of transforming copyright from a scheme of monopoly privileges for publishers into a property right for the actual creators of cultural works had begun.

Check Your Understanding

Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 8 | Section 3.2

Copyrights began to be formally issued in what part of Europe?

- ◯ France in the sixteenth century
- ◯ England under Queen Anne
- ◯ The Republic of Venice in the fifteenth century

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Section 3.3: Copyright in America

After completing this section, you will be able to:

- See the origins of copyright law in the United States.
- Appreciate the importance the Founding Fathers attached to the public need for widespread access to learning and information.

Ever practical, the Founding Fathers sought to construct an intellectual property regime that above all else would encourage the growth of commerce and industry in order to ensure the survival of the young American nation during its precarious beginnings.

For patent law, this meant creating the maximum possible incentives to those whose ingenuity would spur the development of agriculture and domestic industry. As economist Jonathan Hughes once noted, entrepreneur-inventors like Eli Whitney, who developed a cotton gin in 1793 that increased agricultural production a hundredfold, were "the vital few" upon whom the nation depended for progress. That's why early Supreme Court Justice Joseph Story argued that patent rights were "sacred," and the just reward for their contributions to society.

But in copyright law, a different approach was taken—one that acknowledged authors' rights but placed far greater emphasis on the public's need for widespread access to learning and on the growth of markets. James Gilreath, the Library of Congress historian who in the late nineteenth century painstakingly reconstructed Thomas Jefferson's massive

library catalog burned by the British in 1814, explained the Founders' view this way:

> "The constitutional copyright provisions' emphasis on the useful arts sought not to bolster a professional literary establishment of novelists, poets, and critics such as the one that existed in England, but rather to ensure that books with demonstrably practical benefits to society would be available to readers of the new Republic."

This emphasis was certainly in tune with the realities of American book trade. Domestic publishers mainly produced newspapers, almanacs, and practical guides—reading material of useful value to a nation that needed to build an entire economy from scratch. Most important literary works, on the other hand, were imported from Britain and France.

As a result, even in colonial times, states that passed copyright laws did so only with explicit rules that ensured widespread public access to knowledge and information.

Take colonial Connecticut's 1783 copyright law, for example. It certainly contained all the right rhetoric about authors' natural rights:

> "Whereas it is perfectly agreeable to the principles of natural equity and justice, that every author should be secured in receiving the profits that may arise from the sale of his works, and such security may encourage men of learning and genius to publish their writings; which may do honor to their country, and service to mankind."[7]

But it also made it quite clear that copyrighted books had to be offered at reasonable prices or the state would issue a compulsory license enabling anyone to copy these at will. No one failed to get the point.

After the Constitutional Convention and the establishment of Congress, the first federal copyright statute was signed into law by President George Washington on May 31, 1790, less than two months after the first patent law was approved.

The first federal copyright statute was signed into law by President George Washington on May 31, 1790, less than two months after the first patent law was approved. Original painting by John Trumbull, image used under public domain, via flickr.

The law stipulated that "the author and authors of any map, chart, book or books already printed within these United States, being a citizen or citizens thereof, shall have the sole right and liberty of printing, reprinting, publishing and vending such map, chart, book or books" for a period of 14 years, with the right of renewal for another 14 years. The Founders' belief that 28 years was the proper maximum copyright term stands in sharp contrast to today's controversial maximum copyright term of life-plus-70 years, an issue we will discuss later in this chapter.

Anyone violating a copyright "shall forfeit all and every copy and all and every sheet to the author or proprietor who shall forthwith destroy the same." What's more, "offenders shall also forfeit and pay the sum of fifty cents for every sheet which shall

Columbian Centinel.

Printed and published, on Wednesdays and Saturdays, by BENJAMIN RUSSELL, in *State-Street*, Boston, Massachusetts.

Whole No. 660] *Saturday*, July 17, 1790. [No. 36—*of* vol. XIII.

LAWS of the UNITED STATES. PUBLISHED

By Authority.

CONGRESS *of the* UNITED STATES:

AT THE SECOND SESSION,

Begun and held at the City of New-York, on Monday the 4th of January, 1790.

An ACT for the Encouragement of Learning, by securing the Copies of Maps, Charts and Books, to the Authors and Proprietors of such Copies, during the Times therein mentioned.

Be it *enacted by the* Senate *and* House *of* Representatives *of the United States of America, in Congress assembled*, That from and after the passing of this act, the author and authors of any map, chart, book or books already printed within these United States, being a citizen or citizens thereof, or resident within the same, his or their executors, administrators or assigns, shall have the sole right and liberty of printing, reprinting, publishing, and vending such map, chart, book or books, for the term of fourteen years from the date thereof, to the author or authors, being a citizen or citizens thereof, or resident within the same, and his or their executors, administrators or assigns, forever, under the restrictions and limitations hereinafter mentioned.

And be it further enacted, That no person shall be entitled to the benefit of this act, in cases where any map, chart, book or books, shall have been already printed and published, unless he shall first deposit, and in all other cases, unless he shall before publication deposit a printed copy of the title of such map, chart, book or books, in the Clerk's office of the district court where the author or proprietor shall reside: And the clerk of such court is hereby directed and required to record the same forthwith, in a book to be kept by him for that purpose, in the words following, (giving a copy thereof to the said author or proprietor, under the seal of the court, if he shall require the same)

"The Act, *entitled*, "An Act for finally adjusting and satisfying the claims of Friedrich Wilhelm Steuben"—*an Act intitled*, "An Act for giving effect to an Act, intitled, "an Act to establish the judicial Courts of the United States," within the State of North-Carolina"—*an Act, intitled*, "an Act supplemental to the Act for establishing the Salaries of the Executive Officers of Government, with their Assistants and Clerks"—*were inserted in the* Centinel *of June 19, 1790. According to their dates, they follow the above.*

MISCELLANY.

OBSERVATIONS on the Manufactures and Commerce of the United States.

By *W. BARTON*, of *Philadelphia*.

(CONTINUED FROM OUR LAST).

PAPER-HANGINGS, equal in quality and cheapness to any imported, are manufactured in large quantities by Mr. William Poynell, and Messrs. Le Collay and Chardon, at Philadelphia; by Messrs. Mackay and Dixey, at Springfield, in New-Jersey; and other places in the Union".

A great progress has been made in the manufacture of hosiery, in this country; and, with proper encouragement, much more may be accomplished in that branch.

The great and increasing consumption of wine in glasses and bottles, in this country, should operate as a powerful motive for encouraging the glass manufactories already established in some of these states, and for promoting the speedy establishment of similar works in other parts of the Union.—The glass manufactory of Pittsburgh, it is said, gives employment to five hundred persons.

The printing of calicoes, cottons, and linens, may be expected to increase in proportion as we extend the manufactures of those articles: And the multitude and white calicoes imported from India will likewise give employment to our calico printers. Mr. John Hewlin, and Mr. Robert Taylor, both in the neighbourhood of this city, are masterly workmen in this branch: The former obtained a premium from the manufacturing society for the best specimens of printed goods.

In the state of Pennsylvania, there are twenty-one powder mills, capable of making six hundred and twenty-five tons of powder, per annum. [illegible] retails at five dollars per quarter [illegible] is offered for sale in large [illegible] under sixteen dollars per [illegible] The English price, after deducting the bounty 4/6, is 7/6 sterling; or, about sixteen

The Copyright Act of 1790 was reprinted in the Colombian Central newspaper in 1790. Image used under public domain, via Wikimedia Commons.

be found in his or her possession." As a final disincentive to infringers, the law allowed copyright owners to file suit "in any court of record in the United States within one year after the cause of action."

Still, the law's focus on the public interest was clear in the first five words of the text: *"An Act for the Encouragement of Learning*, by securing the Copies of Maps, Charts and Books, to the Authors and Proprietors of such Copies, during the Times therein mentioned."

The failure in the text to distinguish between "authors" and "proprietors" (i.e., publishers, printers, and booksellers), of course, also suggested that Congress did not view copyright as an innate or moral right of authors. In fact, copyright was conditional upon the author or proprietor depositing a copy of the work in the district court and paying a fee of 60 cents.

Another sign that the emphasis of U.S. copyright law was to facilitate the diffusion of knowledge over the protection of authors' inherent property rights was provided by this sentence:

> "Nothing in this act shall be construed to extend to prohibit the importation or vending, reprinting or publishing within the United States, of any map, chart, book or books by any person not a citizen of the United States."

In other words, America's first copyright law explicitly authorized the piracy of foreign cultural works in order to promote widespread citizen access to the benefits of learning.

And that's exactly what Americans did, unabashedly pirating European culture and resisting for a century all attempts to alter what Europeans called its "obnoxious laws."

The first American to receive a U.S. copyright, one month after the Copyright

Mercy Otis Warren was the first woman in the United States to be granted a copyright. Painting by John Singleton Copley, used under public domain via Wikimedia Commons.

Act was signed into law, was John Barry for his spelling book. The first woman granted a copyright was Mrs. Mercy Warren of Massachusetts for her *Poems, Dramatic and Miscellaneous*.

Over the next decade, half of all copyrights went to proprietors, proving yet again that the law's concern was not chiefly with the rights of authors. Most of these were for practical books such as atlases, dictionaries, and textbooks, as one would expect in a society hungering for practical knowledge and lacking in homegrown literary works equal in sophistication to those of the Europeans.

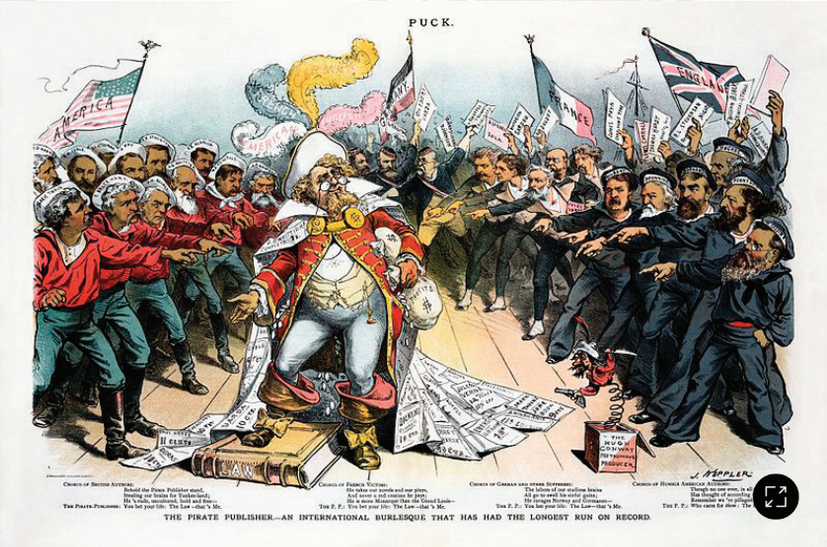
The Pirates of Copyright

As late as 1835, 65 percent of science books, 92 percent of business texts, and 75 percent of law books published in the United States were written by Americans. But even then, a half century after independence, only a third of poetry and drama books published in America were written by Americans.[8]

"A nation of artificers and innovators, both as consumers and producers, American citizens were confident of their global competitiveness in technology, and took an active role in international patent conventions," explains Khan. "Although they excelled at pragmatic contrivances, Americans were advisedly less sanguine about their efforts in the realm of music, art, literature and drama."

According to Ainsworth Spofford, the Librarian of Congress from 1864 to 1897, "a group of publishing houses in the [U.S.], which made a specialty of cheap books, vied with each other in the business of appropriating English and continental trash, and printed this under villainous covers, in type ugly enough to risk a serious increase of opthalmia among American readers."[9]

And not just "trash," either. America gained a notorious reputation internationally for its piracy of English and European literary classics—a practice greatly encouraged by the protectionist levying of tariffs as high as 25 percent on imported books.



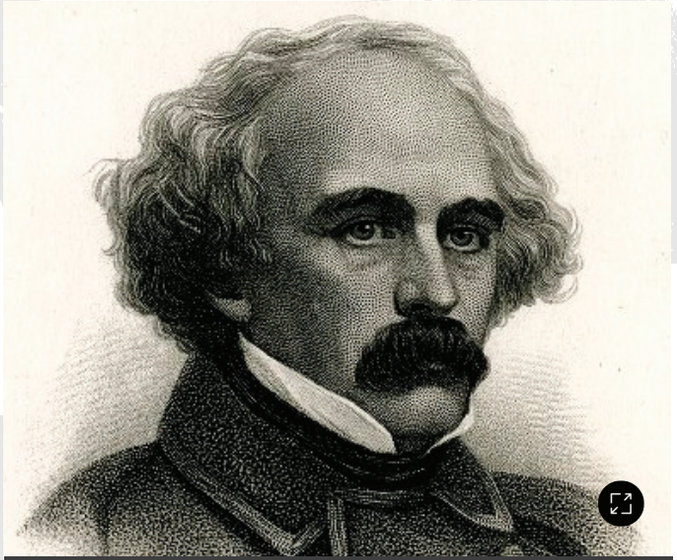
Publishers would often profit by copying works and never paying royalties to the original authors. W. S. Gilbert (fifth man from the right in the front row) and Arthur Sullivan's own Pirates of Penzance first premiered in America before anywhere else to try to gain some profit off of it before unauthorized productions sprung up. Cartoon by Joseph Ferdinand Keppler, used under public domain, via Wikimedia Commons.

Put another way, America in those days was seen as a nation of technological innovators and cultural pirates.

Between 1790 and 1875, more than a hundred petitions were submitted to Congress to bring the United States in line with international copyright laws. All were defeated by publishers' and printers' lobbies. It wasn't until 1891 that the Chace Act granted copyright protection to select foreign authors—but only if their work was published in the United States on or before the publication date in their own countries, and only if the actual printing was done here. The United States failed to qualify for admission to the Berne Convention on copyright until 1988, an astonishing 102 years after the convention.

Such piracy had its costs, however—and not just to foreign authors and publishers. According to Arthur Schlesinger, "So long as publishers … could reprint, or pirate, popular English authors without payment of royalty, and so long as readers could buy such volumes far cheaper than books written by Americans, native authorship was at a marked disadvantage."[10]

Some believe this helps to explain why no great American novels were written in the early nineteenth century. Only in the mid-1800s, with the emergence of novelists like James Fenimore Cooper, Nathaniel Hawthorne, and Henry Wadsworth Longfellow did a change in



Nathaniel Hawthorne, author of *The Scarlet Letter*, helped shape American literature. Image used under public domain, via Wikimedia Commons.

the relative balance of authorship between Americans and foreigners begin to take place. More and more authors took up the pen and influenced American culture, including Harriet Beecher Stowe, who copyrighted *Uncle Tom's Cabin* in 1851. Nonetheless, it wasn't until the early twentieth century, after the United States began to comply with international copyright standards, that Americans became the majority of best-selling authors in the United States.[11]

It would be far too simplistic, of course, to ascribe the late-blooming of American literature simply to weak copyright laws and the prevalence of cheap pirated foreign literature. There are organic reasons why a young nation, and a new culture, needs time to develop its own literary voices. But it is also true, as research worldwide has repeatedly demonstrated, that where weak intellectual property protections exist in developing nations (like today's China or early nineteenth-century America), citizens have an excessive incentive to copy and insufficient incentive to invent and create for themselves.

Check Your Understanding

Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 11 | Section 3.3

At the time of America's first copyright laws, publications in America were mostly focused on which of the following?

- ◯ Literary works
- ◯ Practical guides, newspapers, and almanacs
- ◯ Poetry

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Section 3.4: Role of the U.S. Legal System

After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Understand the utilitarian nature of copyright law.
- Grasp the link between allied rights like the right of privacy and copyright.

During the first century of its existence, the courts repeatedly rejected the idea that copyright law gave priority to the inherent property rights of authors. As the judge in *Koppel v. Downing* put it in 1897:

> "The primary object of this provision is to promote the progress of science and the useful arts, thereby benefitting the public, and as a means to that end and as a secondary object, to secure exclusive rights to authors."

This was, of course, a utilitarian, market-oriented, and quintessentially American way of looking at things. Where copyright promoted the public interest by spreading knowledge and growing markets, it was upheld. Where it hindered those objectives, it was not.

This idea was nowhere more evident than in the way that courts developed the doctrine of "fair use." As outlined by Supreme Court Justice Joseph Story, "fair use" allowed others to use a portion of a copyrighted work if doing so served the public interest—as in the case of a newspaper discussion of a copyrighted

political treatise or a review of a copyrighted collection of poems in a literary journal.

Fair use allows for the use of another's work for the purposes of criticism. This means that movie studios could not sue Siskel and Ebert for showing brief clips of the movies they discussed. Image by Karen Pilling, used under CC BY 2.0, via flickr.

Interestingly, Justice Story did not say how much of an original work could be copied, and even today there is no agreed-upon limit to the number of words that may be copied under fair use. Instead, Justice Story outlined various factors to be considered in determining whether a use was indeed "fair use" or infringement. These include:

- The purpose of the use (i.e., was it for commercial gain or public benefit?)
- "The degree in which the use may prejudice the sale, or diminish the profits, or supersede the objects, of the original work"

"Fair use" would not be formally codified into law until the Copyright Act of 1976, some 150 years later (see "Section 3.8: The Fair Use Doctrine"). Nonetheless, the degree to which fair use was defined in terms of its market impact is typical of the U.S. approach to intellectual property. Whatever promoted economic progress, as patents did, was strongly protected. Whatever hindered that progress, as copyright could potentially do by limiting knowledge diffusion, was less protected. "Fair use was not regarded as an exception to the grant of copyright," says Khan. "Instead, the grant of copyright comprised a limited exception to the primacy of the public domain."[12]

The courts tended to view copyright through the prism of utilitarian public interest in other ways as

well. In 1834, Supreme Court Justice John McLean insisted that:

> "No one can deny that where the legislature [vests] an exclusive right in an author or to an inventor, it has the power to provide the conditions on which such right shall be enjoyed, and that no one can avail himself of such right who does not substantially comply with the requisites of the law. All the conditions are important; the law requires them to be performed."[13]

These included giving proper notice of the copyright, depositing copies of the work in the appropriate district court, registering the work with the U.S. Copyright Office, and renewing the copyright when that was required.[14] Noncompliance with any of these requirements could—and did—result in the loss of copyright protection.

These conditions were consistently enforced throughout the nineteenth century. Indeed, in a major case in 1897, the court held that "an author suing for infringement of a copyright has the burden of showing a literal compliance with each and every statutory requirement in the acquisition of a valid copyright."[15]

Where the courts would not uphold a copyright, however, plaintiffs often found support in the closely connected "allied rights" of unfair competition, breach of contract, and misappropriation of information to prevent the unauthorized use of their work. In 1907, E. P. Dutton published a series of Christmas books that another publisher photographed and sold as its own at lower prices. Dutton did not have a copyright to the series, so it sued the competing publisher for "palming off" under a tort of misrepresentation. And the court in *Dutton v. Cupples* ruled for Dutton that it had a right to the "look and feel" of its original series. According to the court:

> "The decisive fact is that the defendants are unfairly and fraudulently attempting to trade upon the reputation which plaintiff has built up for its books. The right to injunctive relief in such a case is too firmly established to require the citation of authorities."[16]

One of the most interesting and controversial "allied rights"—one that represented an entirely new legal concept—was the right of privacy. In what many consider to be the most influential law review article ever written, Samuel Warren and Louis Brandeis in 1890 argued that one of the oldest principles of common law is that an individual should be secure in his person and his property. But "modern invention and enterprise," they said, had created unwarranted intrusions into people's lives that could not be remedied through existing copyright or tort laws. Therefore, a new right was needed: the right to privacy.

One year later in 1891, the founding case for privacy rights was tried in *Schuyler v. Curtis*, in which the nephew of Mrs. George Schuyler won an injunction against the erection of a statue in his deceased aunt's honor by a third party. Distinguishing between public figures, who had no privacy rights, and private individuals, who did, the court conceded it was making new law.

"It is true that there is no reported decision which goes to this extent in maintaining the right of privacy, and in that respect this is a novel case," said the court. "But the gradual extension of the law in the direction of affording the most complete redress for injury to individual rights makes this an easy step from reported decisions much similar in principle."[17]

What, exactly, did copyright have to do with privacy? Warren and Brandeis noted that copyright protection of unpublished works (at the time granted not by federal law, which governed only published works, but by court decisions stemming from *Donaldson v. Becket*, mentioned above) was centrally concerned with protecting authors' decisions about whether to grant the public access to their work. Similarly, the right of privacy protects individuals from unauthorized access to (or use of) their names, portraits, or personal information. In the more than 122 years that have elapsed since that first case, the right of privacy has continued to expand and evolve to offer two protections: the right against invasion of one's personal privacy, and the right of publicity (the ability to use one's name or image to market products).

The larger point here is that throughout U.S. history, the "modern invention and enterprise" that Warren and Brandeis wrote about has forced Congress and the courts to continually make adjustments to copyright law. In 1831, for example, Congress extended copyright to musical compositions, but it wasn't until 1909—long after the invention of the player piano and phonograph in the 1870s—that Congress revised copyright law to grant composers the first mechanical reproduction rights to their musical compositions. And although photography could be copyrighted by 1865, a lower court still invalidated Thomas Edison's copyright of a motion picture as late as 1903—a decision that was quickly overturned by the appellate court.

The *Great Train Robbery*, a ten-minute silent film released in 1903, is an example of the ways in which copyright law adjusts to technological change. Motion pictures became copyrightable in the early 1900s. Used under public domain.

The ways in which copyright law has adapted to changing technology, market conditions, and consumer habits will be examined in more detail in "Section 3.9: Changes in Copyright Law."

Check Your Understanding

Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 3 | Section 3.4

How was America's emphasis on widespread public access to learning evident in the concept of "fair use" developed by Supreme Court Justice Joseph Story?

- ◯ It nullified copyright in educational institutions.
- ◯ It gave teachers immunity from copyright infringement suits.
- ◯ It allowed others to use a limited portion of a copyrighted work so long as it served the public interest.

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

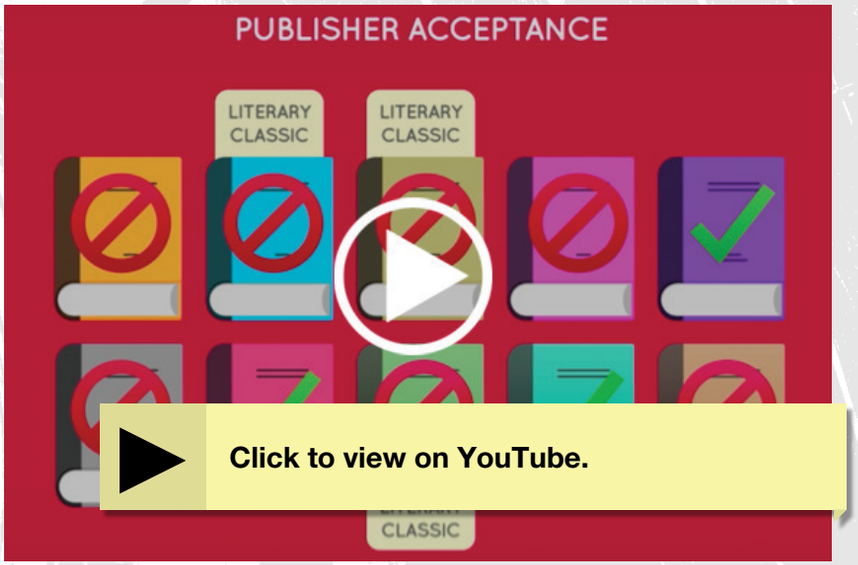
Section 3.5: Eligible Works

After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Know what kinds of creative work are eligible for copyright.
- Grasp the broad definition of "authors" and "literary works."

Can I Copyright That?

Before reading this section, please watch this overview video covering the basics of copyright law — eligible works, the distinction between ideas and their expression, the rights granted to copyright owners, and is copyright term — life plus 70 years.



Title 17 of the United States Code Section 102 explicitly delineates eight categories of original works that are eligible for copyright.

This list, while broad, actually includes a far more extensive range of work than the average citizen

Original Works Eligible for Copyright

1. Literary works
2. Musical works, including any accompanying words
3. Dramatic works, including any accompanying music
4. Pantomimes and choreographic works
5. Pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works
6. Motion pictures and other audiovisual works
7. Sound recordings
8. Architectural works

might imagine. For example, copyrightable works also include software.

Copyrighting Software

Why is software copyrightable? It's because an appellate ruling in the 1983 case of *Apple v. Franklin* held that software was a kind of "literary work" and therefore eligible for copyright.

The court noted that the Copyright Act defined the term "literary work" as follows:

> "Literary works are works, other than audiovisual works, [that are] expressed in words, numbers, or other verbal or numerical symbols or indicia, regardless of the nature of the material objects, such as books, periodicals, manuscripts, phonorecords, film, tapes, disks, or cards, in which they are embodied."[18]

Based on this definition, the court determined that a computer software program "is an appropriate subject of copyright."

Software can either be patented or copyrighted. Image used under public domain.

Note, however, that copyright does not extend to the elements of works of authorship that are potentially patentable processes. And indeed, beginning in the 1990s, software companies began increasingly to patent those elements of their new software that could be described as patentable processes, precisely in order to secure the stronger protections of patent law.

In any event, software is but one example of how the courts have tended to interpret broadly the eight categories of eligible subject matter. Just as technology drove the expansion of eligible subject matter into ever new realms—e.g., first photographs and then motion pictures—the courts have also expanded the definitions of all eight categories of eligible subject matter to include maps, games, puzzles, toys, fabric design, and many other creations.

Ideas to Copyrightable Works

However, not everything is copyrightable—far from it. Just as patent law makes a sharp distinction between ideas and their application—i.e., you cannot patent an *idea* for a better mousetrap but you most certainly can patent a new, non-obvious, and useful *apparatus* that catches mice—so, too, does copyright law differentiate between **ideas and their expression**. You cannot copyright, for example, the *idea* of an epic space opera in which a mystical cadre of Jedi knights wielding laser swords battle galactic evil, but you can copyright the particular expression of that idea in the screenplay and motion picture *Star Wars*.

Turning your ideas into something tangible, like a work of art or movie, helps you protect them. Image used under CC BY 2.0.

Because it is an abstract concept or idea, Einstein's formula $E = MC^2$ is also not copyrightable. It is true

that Einstein was the first to derive the famous formula involving mass and energy, which at first blush seems to fit the requirement for creative authorship in a copyrightable work. But the formula was derived from observation of natural physical laws, and must remain in the public domain lest private intellectual property rights create a blockade that prevents scientists and mathematicians from continuing their research and teaching.

Also noncopyrightable are names, addresses, and other known facts that are not creatively compiled. That's why a phone book cannot be copyrighted, whereas the *creative* compilation of facts in a Chinese-American phone directory listing "Bean Curd & Bean Sprout Shops" may be under certain conditions, as a judge ruled in the 1991 case *Key v. Chinatown*.

To be copyrightable, a creative work must not only be ***expressed*** in a tangible form that allows it to be seen or copied (i.e., put to paper or some other medium), but it must also be ***original.*** The requirement for originality in copyright has its parallel in the necessity for novelty in patents. But this parallel works only to a point, for a copyrighted work need not be novel in the strictest sense to be original.

As Arthur R. Miller and Michael H. Davis explain in their textbook on intellectual property for law students:

> "The author's ideas and themes may have appeared in earlier works, Indeed, much of the expression may have been produced before. But copyright will be available to [this] second author if his is a work of independent creation."[19]

To reiterate, a copyrightable work must not only fit under one of the eight broad categories of eligible subject matter, but it must also be:

- Independently created
- Expressed or fixed on a tangible medium that can be seen or copied
- Creatively authored or compiled
- Not a fact or abstract idea

Check Your Understanding

Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 4 | Section 3.5

Which of the following is NOT one of the eight broad categories of copyrightable work?

- ◯ Literary works
- ◯ Musical works, including any accompanying words
- ◯ Dramatic works, including any accompanying music
- ◯ Pantomimes and choreographic works
- ◯ Creative ideas
- ◯ Pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works
- ◯ Motion pictures and other audiovisual works
- ◯ Sound recordings
- ◯ Architectural works

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Section 3.6: Rights and Term

After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Discern the specific rights granted to copyright owners.
- Understand the term of those rights as well as in some cases their limitations.

Just as common law property rights grant owners' exclusive powers of possession, use, and distribution, so, too, does copyright law provide for six roughly analogous exclusive rights:[20]

1. The right to reproduce the copyrighted work
2. The right to prepare derivative works
3. The right to distribute copies or phonorecords of the copyrighted work to the public by sale or other transfer of ownership, or by rental, lease, or lending
4. The right to perform the copyrighted work publicly
5. The right to display the copyrighted work publicly
6. The right to perform sound recordings publicly through a digital audio transmission

These rights are exclusive to copyright owners—only they or those to whom they have legally assigned their rights can act upon them. Only the author of a copyrighted book, for example, can decide to make copies of (i.e., publish) the work and prepare derivatives of the book, such as a movie version of it. If any person other than the author and copyright owner were to make a movie

based on the book, that person would infringe the copyright.

The term or time period of a copyright varies. For an individual, the term of a copyright is the life of the author plus 70 years after the author is deceased. For a work with two or more authors, the term expires 70 years after the last author's death. Finally, for works that are "made for hire," or anonymous or pseudonymous works, the copyright term lasts 95 years from the first publication or 120 years from the year of the work's creation, whichever comes first.[21] As examples, assume a musical artist writes a song that is published and performed under his name. His copyright will last 70 years beyond his death, and could conceivably be quite valuable to his heirs after his passing. Michael Jackson's vast catalog of original songs will be protected by copyright until the year 2079, for example, and will certainly be worth many hundreds of millions of dollars to his heirs.

On the other hand, imagine that an anonymous Korean War soldier's diary, dated "December 1951" is discovered in an antique shop in the year 2013 and published that same year. Ordinarily, the copyright for an anonymous work would last for 95 years from the date of first publication, expiring in the year 2108. But because the date of creation is known to be 1951, the copyright would expire in 2071, or 120 years after it was written.

Michael Jackson's catalog of original songs will be protected by copyright until the year 2079. Other artists produce cover versions of his songs by paying a small fee. Image used under CC BY-SA 3.0, via Wikimedia Commons.

As noted earlier and discussed later in Section 3.9 of this chapter, these lengthy terms for copyright are controversial and opposed even by many supporters of copyright.

Work for Hire

According to U.S. law, a **work for hire** is:

> "a work prepared by an employee within the scope of his or her employment, or a work specially ordered or commissioned for use as a contribution to a collective work, as a part of a motion picture or other audiovisual work, as a translation, as a supplementary work, as a compilation, as an instructional text, as a test, as answer material for a test, or as an atlas, if the parties expressly agree in a written instrument signed by them that the work shall be considered a work made for hire."[22]

Imagine that you are an employee of a company, and you are asked to write one section of a white paper on a subject of interest to the industry. Or let's say you're a contractor hired to perform that same task under a "work for hire" arrangement. You will not own the copyright to that section of the white paper when it is completed, nor can you publish or use it if you leave the company and go to work for someone else. Although it is your creation, it is owned by the employer, who often uses your work product as part of an integrated project involving other contributors. The copyright for this particular white paper will last for 95 years from the year of first publication, or for 120 years from the year of its creation, whichever expires first.

First-Sale Doctrine

It is important to note, however, that an author's distribution rights (No. 3 above) are strictly limited by what is known as the first-sale doctrine, which terminates those distribution rights once he sells or distributes the work to someone else. For example, once the author of a copyrighted novel lets his publisher distribute copies of that novel to a bookstore, the author's distribution

rights to those copies are ended and the bookstore can do whatever it wants with them—sell them, rent them, give them away, or throw them in the dumpster. The bookstore owner cannot, however, make additional copies of the book because the first-sale doctrine does not limit a copyright owner's *reproduction* right (the first right listed above).

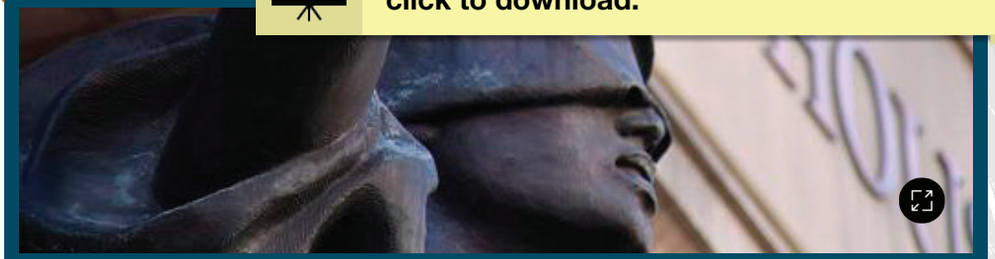
The first-sale doctrine was first delineated in the 1908 Supreme Court case *Bobbs-Merrill Co. v. Straus*. The Bobbs-Merrill Co. distributed copies of a novel titled *The Castaway* to retailers with the proviso that these be sold for exactly one dollar. Printed right in the book itself, in fact, right after the title page, was the following notice:

> "The price of this book at retail is $1 net. No dealer is licensed to sell it at a less price, and a sale at a less price will be treated as an infringement of the copyright."

Retailers, however, sold the book for less than a dollar and the Bobbs-Merrill Co. sued one of them. The high court found that once copies of the book were sold, the distribution rights of the author terminated as to those copies.[23] The ruling came to be known as the first-sale doctrine and was codified into law as 17 U.S.C., § 109. The statute distinctly draws the line at distribution rights, leaving all other rights to the copyright owner.

Slide Show

Slide shows available in free iBooks version, click to download.



This is a photo of a statue of Blind Justice outside the Federal District Courthouse in Alexandria, Virginia. Image by Tim Evanson, used under CC BY-SA 2.0, via flickr.

Bobbs-Merrill Co. v. Straus

The Book's Notice The publishers tried to force one price on all books for resale. They claimed that selling it for less than one dollar would be copyright infringement.

It's the first-sale doctrine that explains why Amazon.com and eBay allow users to resell secondhand copies of printed books, music, and movies at prices of their own choosing—but only if those copies were legally obtained. It is still illegal to sell pirated works.

In 2011, however, a new case in the United States Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit—*John Wiley & Sons, Inc. v. Supap Kirtsaeng*—waived the first-sale doctrine in cases where the copies of the copyrighted work were manufactured abroad.[24] But in March of 2013, the U.S. Supreme Court overturned that ruling in a 6-to-3 decision that affirmed that Mr. Kirtsaeng's rights after first sale trumped the publisher's right to ban imports. He couldn't make unauthorized copies of the book. But just as with secondhand books or Gucci bags bought at a flea market, if the books had been bought legally (regardless of whether they had been imported or sold originally in the United States), Mr. Kirtsaeng had a right to sell them.

The first-sale doctrine was also limited by *Vernor v. Autodesk*, when an appeals court in 2010 ruled that software was not subject to the first-sale doctrine because purchasers of software were actually only licensees and therefore could not resell the software to others.

Most ways you might imagine selling your iTunes library actually involve making new reproductions of the files, and the first-sale doctrine therefore does not apply. Image used under CC BY 2.0, via flickr.

Does the first-sale doctrine apply to digital music, such as your iTunes library? In a case involving the start-up company ReDigi, U.S. District Court Judge Richard J. Sullivan ruled on March 30, 2013, that a resale of digital music that involved creating a new copy on someone else's computer while erasing

the copy on your computer actually concerned the reproduction right, not the distribution right, and the first-sale doctrine therefore did not apply. (You could sell your hard drive that has your music files on it, but most people would not want to do that!) But this decision is likely only the first round in what many feel will ultimately be a successful effort to create legal markets for secondhand digital goods.

First-Sale vs. Moral Rights

The first-sale doctrine does not affect an author's moral rights, which under U.S. copyright law are limited only to certain works of visual art but under European copyright statutes are more broadly applied to other kinds of copyrightable work. Derived from the French concept of *droit d'auteur*, these give authors the power to protect the integrity of their work as well as the right of attribution.[25] Preserving the integrity of a work means that the author has the right to prevent its intentional distortion, mutilation, or modification by others. Authors also have the right to control the use of their name in relation to the work.

Both of these rights, however, have limitations. Under U.S. law, because moral rights are *personal*, they exist only for the life of the author. Only the author can enforce those rights; they cannot be transferred by the author to his heirs or anyone else.

As noted at the beginning of this chapter, registration is not required in order to enjoy copyright protection. Once an author puts words to paper, paint to canvas, or software code into a digital file, it is immediately protected by copyright and nothing more is required.

Although the requirement of registration as a condition of federal copyright protection was discarded over a century ago, when Congress passed the Copyright Act of 1909, the requirement that proper copyright notice be affixed to copies of published works survived much longer. It was only dropped in 1989, when the United States joined the Berne Convention and had to amend its copyright

law to comply with the terms of that convention. Notice and registration of copyright are now discretionary, but recommended. Registration of a copyright provides a legal record of copyright ownership in cases where infringement is alleged, and in fact is required before the author can even file suit for infringement.[26] To register a published work, an author will usually need to submit two copies of the work to the U.S. Copyright Office.

Check Your Understanding

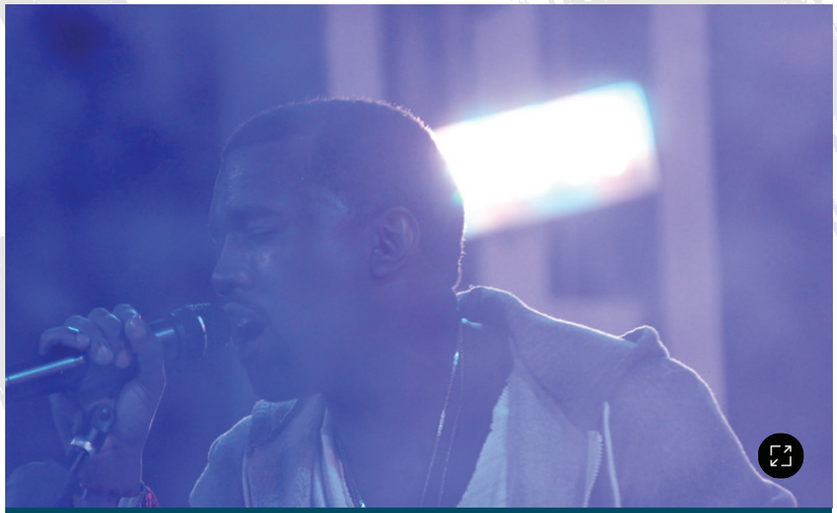
Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 5 | Section 3.6

How many exclusive rights does the U.S. Copyright Act grant?

- ◯ 5
- ◯ 6
- ◯ 8

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Section 3.7: Infringement and Remedies



After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Discuss the specific requirements for proving copyright infringement.
- Understand how copyright is affecting a changing music industry.

What If Someone Infringes Your Copyright?

Before reading this section, please watch this overview video covering what you can do if your novel, blog post, photograph, or song is used by another without permission, and what the famous "Blurred Lines" copyright trial means to you.

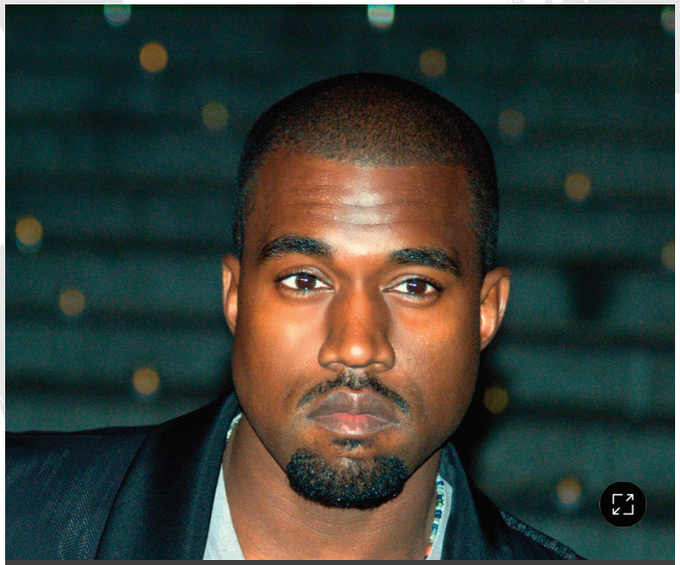
Derived from the common law of trespass, **infringement** of a copyright or any other intellectual property right occurs when a person violates the exclusive rights of its owner. The term gets its meaning from the word "fringe"—implying

a boundary that cannot be crossed. As laid out in Sections 106 through 122 of Title 17 of the U.S. Code and subject to certain exclusions, infringement occurs when a person copies, distributes, performs, or displays all or part of a copyrighted work (or in the world of television, conducts a secondary transmission of a cable system without the express consent of the cable system owner). Copyright infringement requires proof of two things. First, it requires proof that the defendant actually copied from the plaintiff's work. That makes it different than patent infringement, which can take place even if the defendant independently came up with the invention that was patented by the plaintiff. Proof of copying can be obtained either directly, by the defendant admitting his act, or, indirectly, by showing that he had access to the plaintiff's work, and that there are similarities between the works that make independent creation unlikely. Second, infringement requires proof that the allegedly infringing work is substantially similar to the plaintiff's work.[27] The second requirement is there to make clear that not all copying amounts to infringement. For example, copying of a general theme, such as a detective solving a murder mystery, would not be considered infringement.

There are two ways to demonstrate the similarity of an allegedly infringing work and the original copyrighted work. "Fragmented literal similarity" may be shown by demonstrating that the infringing work contains specific copied elements of the original work. For example, suppose that one travel writer wrote a guide to Florida that contained a chapter on Key West, and a second writer copied that chapter and included it in his otherwise independently researched and written guide to Florida. In that case, we could point to specific sentences and paragraphs in the two works that were identical, even if other sentences and paragraphs were not.

Or, to take another example, in today's music scene, certain genres of music use pieces or "samples" of previous sound recordings that are then mixed into a new sound recording. Unless the artist doing the sampling licenses the sound recording (and maybe the underlying musical work as well), the sampling could be considered infringing.

Copyright Infringement in the Music Industry



Musicians such as Kanye West have been subject to infringement lawsuits claiming that their work "sampled" material from other musicians. Image by David Shankbone, used under CC BY 2.0, via flickr.

Take Kanye West, for example. He was recently sued for sampling Sly Johnson's song "Different Strokes" and using it in a new song called "The Joy" on Kanye's and Jay-Z's *Watch the Throne Album*. The case was settled out of court for an undisclosed amount.

The second type of similarity—called comprehensive nonliteral similarity—involves the borrowing of patterns without necessarily borrowing specific elements. In the case of a novel, for example, one author might infringe by copying the plot of another novel, even though he used different words to describe the action taking place. Similarly, a composer of a song might write lyrics and music that closely borrowed patterns from another song, even though he did not use the exact same words and notes.

Again, take Kanye West. He was also recently sued by Vincent Peters, a local Chicago artist, not for sampling his music but rather for employing substantially similar concepts and wording in Kanye's megahit "Stronger." The judge did not agree, finding that Kanye's song had actually used concepts and phrasing that were "common ideas" and in the public domain—specifically, Friedrich Nietzsche's phrase, "That which does not kill us makes us stronger."[28]

But by far, the most significant copyright infringement case in recent years concerning music was the March 10, 2015, verdict against Robin Thicke and Pharrell Williams, the performer and primary songwriter-producer of the 2013 pop hit "Blurred Lines." A federal jury ruled that Thicke

Both artists plan to appeal the decision. Robin Thicke (left) image by Melissa Rose, used under CC BY 2.0, via flickr. Pharrell Williams (right) image by the Bull Pen, used under public domain, via flickr.

and Williams committed copyright infringement by using elements of the 1977 Marvin Gaye classic R&B hit "Got to Give It Up." The jury awarded Gaye's family $7.3 million—a very significant penalty—but the Gaye family announced that they will also seek an injunction against further radio and concert performances of the song, which will certainly give them leverage in negotiating future royalties and songwriting credit.

The case is significant, even beyond the outsize monetary award, because it challenges the growing practice in contemporary music production of incorporating elements, features, themes, and even the "feel" and "mood" of the work of other artists and genres.

Larry Iser, an intellectual property lawyer who has represented artists like Jackson Browne and David Byrne, criticized the verdict. "Although [Marvin] Gaye was the Prince of Soul," Iser told the *New York Times*, "he didn't own a copyright to the genre, and Thicke and Williams' homage to the feel of Marvin Gaye is not infringing."

Despite the critics, musicians and producers will likely be more cautious in the future. In addition to the "Blurred Lines" case, singers Sam Smith and Tom Petty reached a settlement in 2015 granting songwriting credit and royalties to Petty on Smith's song "Stay With Me," which bore some resemblance to Petty's hit "I Won't Back Down."

Actual and Statutory Damages

As we see in the above case, infringing a copyrighted work can carry very significant penalties. The copyright owner has the right to recoup damages

and lost profits from infringement. There are two kinds of damages—actual and statutory. The copyright owner may only receive one or the other form of damages.[29]

Actual damages	Actual damages are the actual losses to a copyright owner from the infringement, calculated by multiplying the number of acts of infringement with the per-unit profits lost from the work not being purchased legally.
Statutory damages	Statutory damages are set to between $750 and $30,000 per act of infringement, and can be increased if the infringement is found to have been committed willfully.

The Recording Industry Association of America (RIAA), for example, was awarded major damages from Jammie Thomas in 2009 for her willful statutory infringement of 24 copyrighted songs that she had uploaded to the music sharing site Kazaa. Because the infringement was found to be willful, the court in its discretion raised the damages maximum from its usual $30,000 per act of infringement to $80,000 per infringement. That $80,000, times 24 songs that were infringed, resulted in a damage award of $1,920,000[30]. After several trials and appeals, however, the damages assessed against Thomas were reduced to $222,000.

Take note, infringers—the risks can be very great, indeed.

Only the owners of registered copyrights may file for statutory damages. That's another reason why it's a good idea to register your copyright.

Sometimes, though, the copyright owner's most important remedy for infringement will be an injunction that forces the infringer to stop illegal actions that cause continuing damage to his rights. The grounds for getting that injunction, however, have tightened in recent years and now require the plaintiff, or copyright owner, to provide substantial evidence of infringement that cannot be repaired without an injunction.

As the court of appeals for the ninth circuit put it in 2011:

> "Our long-standing precedent finding a plaintiff entitled to a presumption of irreparable harm

on a showing of likelihood of success on the merits in a copyright infringement case, as stated in *Elvis Presley v. Passport Video* and relied on by the district court, has been effectively overruled. In other words, 'Elvis has left the building.' Accordingly, we hold that even in a copyright infringement case, the plaintiff must demonstrate a likelihood of irreparable harm as a prerequisite for injunctive relief, whether preliminary or permanent."[31]

Individuals who infringe copyrighted material face not only restitution for damages and lost profits and impoundment and destruction of materials, but strict criminal penalties as well. To be subject to criminal penalties, the infringer must have willfully infringed the copyright. For those doing so for commercial advantage or private financial gain, the sentence may be up to five years for a first offense, and ten years for a second offense.[32]

We have focused solely on the federal penalties for infringement. That's because, with the passage of the 1976 Copyright Act, federal copyright law now preempts state laws. State laws governing breach of contract, violations of trust, trespassing, conversion, invasion of privacy, defamation, and deceptive trade practices still exist, however, and these may also be employed by a copyright owner seeking redress for other harms caused by infringing activity.

Check Your Understanding

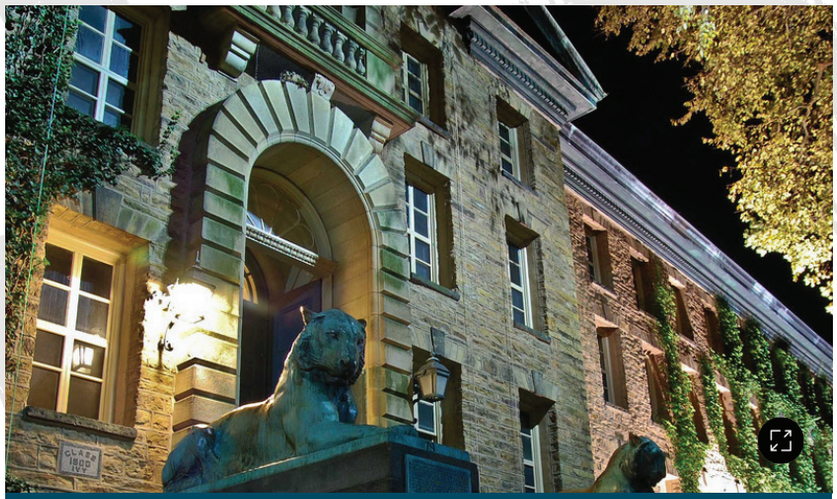
Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 8 | Section 3.7

If attorneys could demonstrate in court that Kanye West "sampled" or used pieces of Sly Johnson's song "Different Strokes" in a song called "The Joy," this would be evidence of what kind of copyright infringement?

- ◯ Comprehensive nonliteral similarity
- ◯ Fragmented literal similarity

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Section 3.8: The Fair Use Defense



After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Understand the nature of fair use and how it serves the public interest.
- Appreciate the continuing debate over just vagaries in what is considered fair use.

Is It Fair Use or Infringement?

Before reading this section, please watch this overview video covering Fair Use is an enigma — indeed, no one even knows how many words of a copyrighted work one can legally copy as "fair use." Here, at last, is everything you need to know about Fair Use.

Title 17 of the United States Code allows the copying and use of copyrighted material for specific *purposes*—including criticism, comment, news reporting, teaching (involving multiple copies

Infringement or "Fair Use" Factors.

1. The purpose and character of the use, including whether such use is of a commercial nature or is for nonprofit educational purposes
2. The nature of the copyrighted work
3. The amount and substantiality of the portion used in relation to the copyrighted work as a whole
4. The effect of the use upon the potential market for or value of the copyrighted work

for classroom use), scholarship, or research. The statute also describes four *factors* that draw on the precepts first discussed by Supreme Court Justice Story 150 years earlier to determine if the use of a copyrighted work is infringement or "fair use."[33]

Based on these factors, which are not meant to be all inclusive, a judge must determine if the use of copyrighted material is within the bounds of fair use. What makes that determination sometimes difficult is the challenge of weighing a variety of purposes—was the work used for criticism, comment, news reporting, teaching, scholarship, or research?—in concert with various factors (such as how much was used, and whether it was for commercial gain or not).

In the crucial 1973 Supreme Court case of *Williams & Wilkins v. United States*, for example, the divided justices affirmed a lower U.S. Court of Claims decision that the benefits of freely distributing photocopies of medical journal articles to nonprofit government research libraries outweighed the reduction of potential revenue to the publisher of those journals.[34]

Parody

One of the purposes for which copyrighted work may at times be freely used is parody. As a federal court ruled in one 1993 case:

> "The heart of any parodist's claim to quote from existing material is the use of some elements of a prior author's composition to create a new one that, at least in part, comments on that author's work." [35]

And the greater the "transformative" nature of the new work, the less likely it infringes the original work.

A case involving the Fox TV show *Family Guy* illustrates the point. In *Bourne Co. v. Fox*, the court found that a *Family Guy* episode in which the character Peter Griffin sang a revised version of the song "When You Wish Upon a Star" called "I Need a Jew" was a parody and thereby a fair use of the original material. The outrageous if not offensive visuals and words employed in the *Family Guy* parody were so substantially different in character and form from the original use of the song in the Walt Disney movie *Pinocchio* that no one could ever confuse the two or fail to realize that Fox's use was a parody.

Even when comparing the costumes and poster design to the original movies, no one would ever confuse *Family Guy*'s parody of the *Star Wars* franchise with the originals. Image used under CC BY 2.0, via flickr.

Transformative or Theft?

A very interesting case involving fair use was decided by the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit on April 25, 2013. It overturned a 2011 district court ruling that artist Richard Prince had acted illegally by using another artist's photographs to create a series of collages and paintings. Such borrowing of another's work is considered fair use only if it is "transformative" in some substantial way, and the district judge held that it was not because the collages did not comment on the original work explicitly. The federal circuit disagreed, holding that explicit references to the original work are not required so long as the required "transformation" is manifested by "an entirely different aesthetic" in the secondary work.

According to the appeals court:

> "Where [the original artist's] serene and deliberately composed portrait and landscape photographs depict

the natural beauty of the Rastafarians and their surrounding environs, Prince's crude and jarring works are hectic and provocative."

Fair Use for Public Good

The fair use clause also allows libraries and archives that are open to the public, or researchers in a specialized field, to use copyrighted materials for the purpose of preservation and security of the material or as a deposit for research. These libraries and archives can keep up to three copies of a copyrighted work, but a copyright notice must be included on each copy. Libraries and archives will not be held liable for "unsupervised use of reproducing equipment located on its premises" if there is a notice on the equipment that a copy may be subject to copyright law.[36] Any use of photocopied copyrighted materials must be specifically for private study, scholarship, or research, and any other use constitutes infringement. Photocopying copyrighted materials in a business setting is also infringing if used outside of research.

Academic institutions also are protected by specific rules regarding fair use, pursuant to an agreement between representatives of the publishing industry and of academic institutions negotiated in the 1970s. The photocopying of a copyrighted work for the classroom is permitted if it is limited to:

1. A chapter from a book
2. An article from a periodical or newspaper
3. A short story, short essay, or short poem, whether or not from a collective work
4. A chart, graph, diagram, drawing, cartoon, or picture from a book, periodical, or newspaper[37]

But even in the above academic uses, limitations apply regarding the size of both the audience and the content to be copied. For example, teachers may photocopy works only for students enrolled in the class. The photocopied material must also pass brevity, spontaneity, and other tests. "Brevity" means no more than 250 words of a poem,

2,500 words of a prose work, or 10 percent or 1,000 words of an excerpt of a prose work may be used. In addition, the decision to photocopy the material must be spontaneous; the photocopied material must be used only for one course and one class term; no more than one poem, article, story, or essay—and no more than two excerpts—may be copied from the same author; and such bulk photocopying must be limited to nine instances per class during one term.[38]

A teacher could photocopy lyrics from the opening number of the musical *Hamilton* to be used for a class discussion on rhyme scheme. However, the same teacher could not photocopy the entire script and musical score. Image by Pete Souza used under public domain, via Wikimedia Commons.

Finally, copyrighted works may not be photocopied and used in educational settings as a substitute for required texts, photocopies may not be mandatory, and you cannot charge for the photocopied work (although you may recoup the costs of photocopying).[39]

Check Your Understanding

Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 2 | Section 3.8

Fair use allows for the copying and use of copyrighted material for all EXCEPT which specific purpose?

- ◯ Criticism and comment
- ◯ News reporting
- ◯ Teaching or research
- ◯ Political organizing

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Section 3.9: Changes in Copyright Law

After completing this section, you will be able to:

- See how copyright law has continually adapted to technological change.
- Note how digital entertainment industries in particular have been affected by changes in copyright law

Throughout the more than 226-year history of copyright in the United States, technological innovation and changes in consumer behavior have continuously forced Congress and the courts to embrace new forms of copyrighted media and new ways of distributing and consuming it.

The Copyright Act of 1976

As noted earlier, the nineteenth century saw copyright expand to include a variety of new technologies, such as mechanical reproductions of musical compositions (player pianos and phonographs), photography, and eventually motion pictures. But those changes were small compared with the enormous advances of the twentieth century. The invention of radio, broadcast television, cable television, the video cassette recorder (VCR), personal computers, computer software and video games, digital audio recorders, compact discs, the digital video recorder (DVR), the Internet, iTunes media players, and now the

streaming of music and movies all offered consumers new forms of creative content—and offered creators a new means of reproducing and distributing it. Each of these required an adjustment in U.S. copyright law.

Take the advent of cable television in the 1960s and 1970s. Early court cases like *Fortnightly Corp. v. United Artists* in 1968 and *Teleprompter v. CBS* in 1974 held that the rebroadcast of broadcast television shows over cable television systems did not constitute a "performance" and therefore did not infringe the copyright in those shows. The **Copyright Act of 1976**—the most significant revision of copyright law since 1909—remedied this failure to see cable broadcasts as performances and extended copyright protection to works performed over cable TV.

The Copyright Act of 1976 helped protect works distributed by cable television; a 1995 amendment helped protect sound recordings performed via digital audio transmission. Image used under CC BY 2.0, via flickr.

The **Copyright Act of 1976** made several other major changes to the law. It also codified "fair use" into the statutes rather than simply the common law, granted statutory copyright protection as soon as a work was reduced to a concrete form rather than only when registered, and began to bring the United States into compliance with international copyright law rather than continue to stand apart from it.[40]

The Computer Software Rental Act of 1990

The next major copyright issue arose with the emergence of personal computer software in the 1980s. Software companies and independent developers lobbied Congress to curtail the illegal copying of copyrighted software. As a result, the Computer Software Rental Act of 1990 was passed, prohibiting the unauthorized rental, lease, or lending of a computer program for commercial gain. Individuals, however, could still make personal copies for their own use, and libraries were permitted to lend software.[41]

Pirate Bay is one site known for directing users to unauthorized pirated copies of songs, movies, and other works. Despite many attempts to take down and/or block the site, proxies still spring up. Image used under express permission of copyright holder for any purpose, via Wikimedia Commons.

The hope was that this would curb the rampant software piracy then costing U.S. firms roughly $1 billion per year in lost sales and rentals. The law probably did slow piracy inside the United States. But by 2010, software piracy worldwide had grown into a $10 billion a year business.

The Audio Home Recording Act of 1992

Hoping to prevent similar piracy in the emerging digital audio field, the Audio Home Recording Act of 1992 amended copyright law to require manufacturers and importers of digital audio recording devices to install technology to prevent the illegal copying of copyrighted music. It also mandated that royalties be paid to copyright owners for every device sold.

DVDs often include warnings against illegal copying and distributing of media before you ever reach the main menu. Image used under CC BY 2.0, via flickr.

When it came to performance rights—one of the six exclusive rights of copyright owners—the last 150 years have witnessed major changes in the way musical performances are distributed and consumed. The American Society of Composers, Authors and Publishers (ASCAP) was formed in 1914 to develop a system whereby royalties could be obtained for composers whose songs were performed live—and later on, over the newly invented technology of radio. Today, 435,000 U.S. composers, songwriters, lyricists, and music publishers rely upon ASCAP to secure royalties for their work performed over TV, CD, and every new media that has come after radio.

The other three performing rights organizations are SESAC, formed in 1930; Broadcast Music, Inc. (BMI), formed in 1939; and SoundExchange, which in 2007 was granted the sole

right by the Copyright Royalty Board to represent performers whose music airs on satellite radio (such as SIRIUS XM), Internet radio (like Pandora), cable TV music channels, and similar platforms for streaming sound recordings. The Recording Industry of America Association (RIAA), formed in 1952, represents record labels and music distributors and has played an important role in ensuring that their rights are respected even as new technologies for distributing recorded music have emerged.

No Electronic Theft Act of 1997 & Digital Millennium Copyright Act of 1998

The RIAA lobbied Congress to enact the No Electronic Theft Act of 1997, for example, which made it a criminal offense to reproduce or distribute music by electronic means (i.e., over the Internet). Nonetheless, by 2002, some 3.6 billion songs a month were still being downloaded illegally, thanks to music sharing sites like Napster, which had been launched in 1999 and at its peak facilitated the downloading (much of it illegal) of 80 million songs. Indeed, many college dormitory networks became overloaded with MP3 musical file transfers.

Napster fell into trouble over copyright infringement with music and was eventually sold and incorporated into Rhapsody, a legitimate music site. Image used under CC BY-SA 3.0, via Wikimedia Commons.

At the time, many Internet pundits, enthralled with the misquoted notion that "information wants to be free" online, insisted that downloading technology made it impossible for musicians and their labels to enforce their copyrights on the Internet. For its part, Napster claimed that they should not be held responsible for any illegal downloading committed by users.

But the RIAA and musicians brought suits for contributory infringement. In court cases like

A & M Records. v. Napster and *Metallica v. Napster*, judges and juries repeatedly found Napster guilty of infringement and it was forced into bankruptcy in 2002.

Music piracy still exists, of course. But in place of Napster, music consumers now have legal music download sites such as Apple's iTunes music store that sell digital music with permission from, and appropriate royalties to, their copyright owners. Surveys show that most consumers don't really want to steal music. They just want convenient, low-cost online access to it. Most consumers also appear to recognize that if music creators cannot make a living from their work, they won't be able to keep making music.

Meanwhile, digital rights management (DRM) technologies had been developed that have the potential to limit the piracy of copyrighted content. Companies in various content industries lobbied Congress to pass the **Digital Millennium Copyright Act of 1998 (DMCA)**. This law made it a crime to disseminate technology or services that could circumvent DRM measures used to control access to copyrighted movies, music, and books. It also increased penalties for copyright infringement on the Internet.

But in an appropriate concession to online services that merely hosted user content, the DMCA limited the liability of online services for copyright infringement committed by their users, so long as they acted to remove the offending content once informed of it.

Viacom vs. YouTube

In 2007, however, Viacom filed suit against YouTube and its corporate parent Google for copyright infringement, claiming that the popular video-sharing site was committing "massive intentional copyright infringement" for not taking sufficient steps to prevent or remove some 160,000 unauthorized clips of Viacom's entertainment programming posted by users. Google argued that the DMCA's "safe harbor" provisions shielded them from liability for the actions of its users, and

a district court judge ruled in favor of Google in 2010. But in April of 2012, a court of appeals vacated that decision and ruled that Viacom had presented enough evidence to warrant a trial. Viacom was seeking more than $1 *billion* in damages from YouTube, but in March of 2014, the parties quietly settled the seven-year-old case.

YouTube also uses some of its ad revenues to pay royalties for cover versions of songs posted on the site. Image used under public domain, via Wikimedia Commons.

A key factor in spurring the settlement is that Google has in the interim addressed the concerns of content owners like Viacom by creating a system that allows them to track their content when posted on YouTube and then request it be taken down or run with ads.

Extending Copyrights

The same year that saw passage of the DMCA also witnessed the passage of the **Sonny Bono Copyright Term Extension Act**, which added an additional 20 years to the term of copyright—extending it for most works to the life of the author plus 70 years after the author is deceased. Critics called it the "Mickey Mouse Protection Act" because it effectively extended the copyrights of many of the characters and content of the Walt Disney Company, which lobbied strongly for the bill. They argued that copyright law was historically designed to serve a public purpose and ought to defer to the public interest, as it has throughout U.S. history. As the *New York Times* put it:

> "When Senator Hatch laments that George Gershwin's 'Rhapsody in Blue' will soon 'fall into the public domain,' he makes the public domain sound like a dark abyss where songs go, never to be heard again. In fact, when a work enters the public domain it means the public can afford to use it freely, to give it new currency."

Even a staunch defender of intellectual property rights like Professor Richard Epstein of the NYU School of Law—he was rated one of the top legal thinkers of modern times by the journal *Legal Affairs*—believes that the copyright term of life-plus-70s years is too long.

"My own view is that no commercial property right should ever be tied to life, and the extra 70 years is far too long," he argues. "It has the potential to create an anti-commons that deprives the public of its rights to freely access cultural works. Copyrighted works should pass into the public domain after 28 years, which was the approach of the Founders."

The debate over the Copyright Term Extension Act, not surprisingly, continues.

In the international sphere, meanwhile, the late twentieth century also saw the United States finally agree to the **Berne Convention** in 1988, joining the following year. The purpose of the convention is to ensure fair and reciprocal copyright protection for member nations. Although it did not create an international copyright per se, it did require the United States to amend its copyright law to comply with certain Berne provisions, such as a ban on registration as a condition of copyright. But overall, the convention facilitated the reciprocal cross-border protection of creative works while leaving most details of each nation's copyright laws to member states.

One proposed bill that didn't make it into law was the *Consumer Broadband and Digital Television Promotion Act* of 2002. It attempted to deal with continuing piracy of copyrighted works by requiring every medium and every device for the consumption of copyrighted works to implement digital rights management (DRM) technology. But the bill was considered too draconian—too *1984*, if you will—and failed to pass.

To be sure, many companies have voluntarily implemented elements of DRM technology, to the chagrin of many consumers. Some electronic book readers (e-books) limit the ability of users to read books only on those devices, preventing

interoperability between Kindle and iPad e-book readers, for example. Some music labels install software on their CDs to prevent copying of the music. And some Blu-ray and DVD movie players do not allow for the creation of transformative copies. In fact, iTunes, a very popular way to manage music and other media, used to employ a DRM system that limited the transfer of songs to five authorized computers.

Groups like the Free Software Foundation argue that "The motive for DRM schemes is to increase profits for those who impose them, but their profit is a side issue when millions of people's freedom is at stake." But their argument is undercut by the simple reality that if content creators can't make a living from it, most will stop creating and take day jobs to pay the rent. This has always been the copyright bargain in America—protection for the rights of creators but only so long as it serves the public interest.

And enabling creators to keep creating is clearly in the public interest.

E-Books

A more legitimate concern regarding DRM is that, whatever its perceived benefits for publishers and distributors, it is holding back innovation and consumer rights in digital content industries. This is especially evident in the burgeoning e-book market, which exploded from barely 10 percent of U.S. book sales in 2011 to 30 percent of all book sales by 2013. But a growing number of e-book publishers have now concluded that unless they meet consumer demands to ease these DRM anti-piracy provisions, further growth could be constrained.

According to Microsoft's Chief Intellectual Property Strategy Counsel Tom Rubin, a leading voice on this issue, that's because DRM makes the e-book reader experience much less enjoyable and useful than that for printed books. According to Rubin:

> "When I buy a printed book, I can choose where to buy it—whether from a small neighborhood bookstore, a large chain bookstore, a grocery

store, drug store, other retail establishment, or an online retailer. I can even buy books at a steep discount by going to second-hand stores, garage sales, and flea markets.

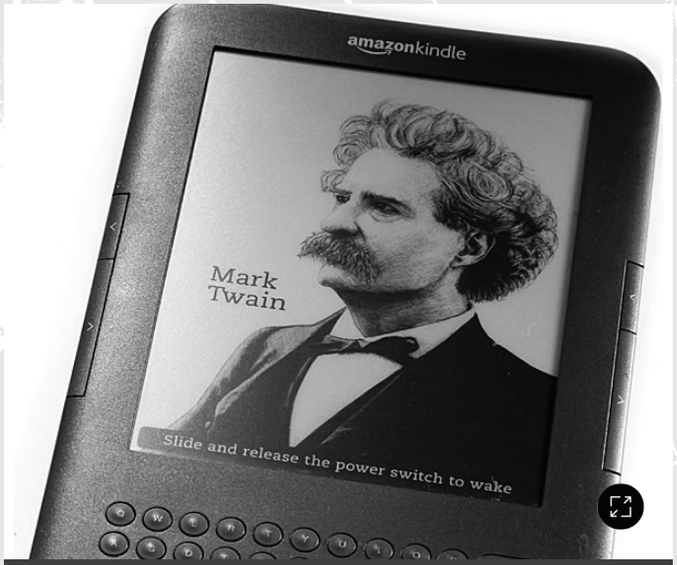
"You can't do that with an ebook.

"Then after I buy a print book and bring it home, I can write notes in the margin, share those passages or even the whole book with friends and colleagues, and even photocopy a few pages for my book club.

"You can't do that with an ebook."

Rubin says the fault here lies not in the technology, which already exists to enable these capabilities in e-books and also augment them with rich audio, video, and social media. Rather, it lies in the business arrangements underlying the publication and distribution of e-books.

The e-book you buy, for example, is often available from only one source—and usually only readable on one proprietary device. You can't access it from any device you want, nor can you use the e-reader app of your choice. This balkanization of the market diverts resources from enhancing the user experience into defending the turf of incumbent players.



Because the e-book market is still so new, copyright laws are still being debated. Image used under CC BY-SA 3.0, via Wikimedia Commons.

But it's not just the balkanization of the market that hinders competition and innovation. Some publishers now believe that the digital rights management (DRM) controls they employ to prevent piracy are actually preventing many consumers from fully embracing e-books. After all, as many book buyers have angrily noted, you

can't even download the digital version of a print book that you've already purchased unless you pay a second time.

Publishing DRM Free

> *"The consumer ebook market is an emerging and changing one, and we want to offer customers as many choices as possible."*
>
> -Elsevier spokeswoman Suzanne BeDell

In response to consumer complaints, some publishers have dispensed with DRM controls. *Harry Potter* author J. K. Rowling has launched her own website, *Pottermore.com*, to sell her e-books DRM free, enabling readers to enjoy them on any device they choose. Interestingly, the piracy of *Harry Potter* books has declined by 25 percent since DRM was dropped in 2012.

Also in 2012, Tor Books, a major science fiction publisher owned by MacMillan, went DRM free as well, with no apparent harm to its sales—and to the delight of its customers.

Then there's the big U.S. tech publisher O'Reilly, which has been DRM free since its inception. O'Reilly, which has one of the most loyal customer bases in publishing, signed a deal on April 16 of 2013 with Elsevier, the world's largest publisher of scientific and health information, to distribute more than 1,200 titles DRM free. (It also distributes all Microsoft e-books DRM free.)

"The consumer ebook market is an emerging and changing one, and we want to offer customers as many choices as possible," explained Elsevier spokeswoman Suzanne BeDell.

And finally, although the prestigious Harvard Business Press still sells its books on Amazon with DRM restrictions, it recently started selling books on its own site DRM free.

These early publisher moves to dispense with DRM restrictions parallel what happened in the digital music industry a decade ago. For the first few years after the launch of the iTunes music store in 2003, piracy-wary music publishers required Apple to sell its songs with DRM controls that limited the kind and number of devices consumers could play them on.

But on February 6, 2007, Apple CEO Steve Jobs wrote an open letter to the industry urging music publishers to let iTunes sell music DRM free:

> "DRMs haven't worked, and may never work, to halt music piracy. If such requirements were removed, the music industry might experience an influx of new companies willing to invest in new [music distribution systems]."

This, said Jobs, would obviously be "positive for the music companies."

And sure enough, once publishers agreed to license digital music DRM free later that same year, the market exploded. In 2013, iTunes announced the sale of its twenty-fifth billionth song!

Ultimately, argues Rubin:

> "Success [for ebook publishers] can only come with the satisfaction of legitimate consumer needs—most especially the need for an ebook experience that is every bit as good or better than that of their beloved printed books."

Recent Copyright Laws

The debate over DRM in e-books is likely to be center stage in the copyright debate in coming years. In the meantime, it's worth mentioning three other copyright-related laws that were passed during the last decade or so.

One, the Technology, Education, and Copyright Harmonization (TEACH) Act of 2002 enabled educators to use certain copyrighted performances and displays for educational purposes.[42] The bill was focused on the fast-growing arena of distance education, whose students number 12 million and are growing rapidly.

Also that year, the Small Webcaster Settlement Act of 2002 eased royalty burdens for small webcasters who don't have the resources of the major content distributors. [43]

Finally, the Family Entertainment and Copyright Act of 2005 mandated fines and possible imprisonment for the unauthorized recording of motion pictures in theaters. It also enabled consumers to use new technologies to screen out or skip over some 14 different categories of objectionable content in movies played on DVD players and other devices.[44]

Check Your Understanding

Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 3 | Section 3.9

What major change in copyright law was NOT made in the Copyright Act of 1976?

- It extended copyright to performances via cable television.
- It prohibited the unauthorized rental or lease of computer software programs.
- It codified fair use into the statutes.

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Section 3.10: New Technology Challenges to Copyright

After completing this section, you will be able to:

- See how a changing music industry has been affected by copyright.
- Appreciate the challenges that continued technology advances may pose for copyright in the future.

One of the newest technology challenges facing copyright law concerns royalty rates for streaming music online. As it stands, royalty rates are much lower for music played over satellite and cable radio outlets like Sirius XM than they are for music streaming services like Pandora.

Music Streaming

Rates are set by the federal Copyright Royalty Board (CRB), a three-judge panel, but currently they apply a different rate for streaming music than they do for satellite and cable music. Sirius pays about 8 percent of its revenue to record companies and artists. Pandora, however, claims it must pay a rate per song streamed that amounts to 44 percent of revenue. So it pushed for the introduction in September 2012 of the Internet Radio Fairness Act, which would make the rates for Internet radio companies the same as those for satellite and cable radio.

This bill was opposed not only by many musical artists and their organizations,

but by many copyright experts as well. In November of 2012, a who's who of musicians and singers—including stars from Motown, rock and roll, country, rap, and jazz—published an open letter in *Billboard* magazine opposing Pandora's plan to cut artists' pay and make more money, as they put it in the letter, "on the backs of hard working musicians and singers."

In November of 2013, Pandora quietly abandoned efforts to seek legislation that would help reduce the royalties paid to rights holders. Instead of pursuing legislation, Pandora said it will focus its efforts on lobbying the CRB.

In early December 2015, the music industry waited breathlessly for the CRB's decision on royalty rates. Pandora had petitioned the CRB to reduce the current statutory rate of 14 cents per 100 songs to 11 cents per 100 songs starting in 2016. But music labels and artists represented by a royalty collection organization called SoundExchange wanted the statutory royalty rate raised to 25 cents per 100 songs—an 80 percent increase—and then by 1 cent every year after that until 2020. Collectively, music streaming services have a combined listenership of 100 million people and are the fastest-growing revenue source for artists and music labels.

On December 16, 2015, in a victory for record labels and artists, the CRB ruled that online radio firms will have to pay 17 cents per 100 plays of songs through 2020.

TV Streaming

Another new technology challenge to copyright involved television broadcasters and an upstart television service called Aereo that at one point rented dime-sized antennas for $8 per month that act like long-range rabbit ears to people with digital video recorders, enabling them to watch and record over-the-air network channels like NBC or Fox without paying the much-larger fees for cable or satellite service.

TV broadcasters argued that Aereo violated their copyrights by rebroadcasting their TV signals. Aereo, however, claimed that it was the subscribers

who were doing the transmitting, and that Aereo merely rented a tool that enabled people to watch a private performance—much like they do when they tape a TV show and watch it in their living room.

The case, which had the TV and technology industries on edge, was decided in their favor on June 25, 2014, by the U.S. Supreme Court, which ruled that Aereo had infringed the rights of copyright holders. Five months later, Aereo declared bankruptcy.

Check Your Understanding

Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 1 | Section 3.10

On December 16, 2015, the Copyright Royalty Board changed the royalty rates paid by music services like Pandora. What change was made?

- ◯ The board reduced the rate from 14 cents per 100 songs played to 11 cents.
- ◯ The board raised the rate to 17 cents per 100 songs played.

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Section 3.11: Alternative Forms of Copyright

After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Understand how alternative forms of copyright are emerging in today's increasingly digital ecosystem.

Up to now, we have focused on traditional copyright situations in which an author usually pursues some sort of monetary gain in exchange for the use of his creative work as well as situations in which the author also wants to prevent any alteration of his work. But what if an author simply wants to get his work out before the broadest possible readership and monetary gain is not an issue? What if an author would welcome others adding to his original work? In these cases, there are new kinds of copyright licenses that may be employed by authors.

Creative Commons

By providing model licenses, Creative Commons helps creators share their works under conditions that they choose. Image used under public domain via Wikimedia Commons.

The development of the Creative Commons represents a voluntary private sector alternative to traditional copyright that coordinates the creation and consumption of content among a wide variety of individuals and institutions—all without a hint of

government intervention. In doing so, Creative Commons captures a whole section of the market for which broad dissemination of content and not financial gain is key, which is something that could not be done as effectively by either traditional copyright or the public domain.

The Creative Commons License is currently available in six flavors:

Attribution (CC BY) license	This most liberal Creative Commons license allows others to change or add to your work in any way they want, even for commercial purposes, so long as they credit you for the original creation.
Attribution-ShareAlike (CC BY-SA) license	This license allows others to change or add to your work in any way they want, even for commercial purposes, so long as they credit you and then subsequently license *their* new creations on the same terms.
Attribution-NoDerivs (CC BY-ND)	The work must remain unchanged but allows for redistribution for commercial and noncommercial purposes with credit to the author. This is the license under which this book is offered.
Attribution-NonCommercial (CC BY-NC)	This allows others to change or add to your work in any way, but only for noncommercial purposes. Derivative works do not have to be licensed on the same terms.
Attribution-NonCommercial-ShareAlike (CC BY-NC-SA)	This allows others to change or add to your work but only for noncommercial purposes, so long as they credit the author and license their derivative works under the same terms.
Attribution-NonCommercial-NoDerivs (CC BY-NC-ND)	This most restrictive of Creative Commons licenses allows others to download your work and share it with others as long as they credit you. But they cannot change the work in any way or use it for commercial purposes.[45]

All of these licenses require the work to be copyrighted because the Creative Commons license is based on copyright. Although Creative Commons licenses can provide authors with added opportunities to have their work distributed and used, these licenses do not allow authors to limit any of the rights otherwise available under copyright law, such as fair use.

Creative Commons licenses also cannot be revoked, which means that if copies of your work are distributed under a Creative Commons license, they will always be distributed that way. If, for example, you distribute your amazing new video under a Creative Commons license and it generates five million page views on YouTube—and then 20th Century Fox offers you a seven-figure deal for exclusive rights to distribute your video—you will not be able to prevent everyone

on the planet from continuing to distribute your video for free on the Internet.

Open Access

Another alternative copyright approach is called open access, founded by the Budapest Open Access Initiative in 2002. Open access encourages scholars to provide the fruits of their research online without expectation of payment.[46] The aim here is to open up scholarly research far more widely than is currently the case, but open access adherents face a key challenge in the fact that many scholarly articles are published in expensive journals as "works made for hire." This means that the rights belong to the journals, not the authors. But open access supporters are working with publishers to try to overcome this limitation and create more opportunities for scholarly research to be made more widely accessible at lower cost.

Finally, open source software licensing also offers an alternative to traditional copyright. An open source license for computer software allows the source code to be used, modified, and/or shared under certain defined terms and conditions set by the Open Source Initiative, an educational, advocacy, and stewardship organization formed in 1998. An open source license allows end users to modify the source code for their own purposes. Open source licensed software is mostly available free of charge, though this does not always have to be the case.

The point of open access publication of scholarly works is to make knowledge available to everyone. Image used under CC0 1.0, via Wikimedia Commons.

Check Your Understanding

Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 2 | Section 3.11

Which of the following alternative channels for licensing copyright never allows users to change, modify, or reuse original content?

- ◯ Open source software licensing
- ◯ Open access publishing
- ◯ Creative Commons licenses

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Section 3.12: Copyright in a Changing World

After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Understand how copyright law is showing signs of strain today.
- Realize that it may very well need to adapt to an increasingly mobile world.

Comprehensive copyright reform may soon be on the horizon. On March 20, 2013, Register of Copyrights at the United States Copyright Office Maria A. Pallante testified before the House Judiciary Committee that the time had come for a comprehensive review and updating of the Copyright Act.

According to Pallante:

> "The law is showing the strain of age and requires your attention. [People] increasingly are accessing content on mobile devices and fewer and fewer of them will need or desire the physical copies that were so central to the 19th and 20th century copyright laws."

The list of issues requiring attention is long, involving everything from copyright term and digital rights management restrictions on digital content to the legality of developing secondary resale markets for digital content as exist with traditional printed content.

The debates may be contentious, as they always are when intellectual

property rights are involved. But U.S. copyright law has throughout our history demonstrated a remarkable ability to adapt to new economic, social, and technological realities, and there is no reason to doubt that it will continue to do so.

CHAPTER

4

TRADEMARK BASICS

Chapter Summary

Unlike patents and copyrights, trademarks cannot be obtained by mere adoption. They must be used in commercial activity. Trademarks identify the origin of goods and services, preventing confusion in the marketplace and protecting the good name of the businesses providing these goods and services. Thought not a requirement, registering a trademark with the federal government grants additional rights and privileges.

Key Terms

trademark, *service marks*, *certification marks*, *collective marks*, *distinctiveness*, *spectrum of distinctiveness*, *fanciful marks*

Section: 4.1: Core Concepts

After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Understand trademarks and their properties.
- Identify differences between trademarks and other intellectual property rights.

A **trademark** is an intellectual property right granted by a government to an individual, business, or legal entity that creates and uses a distinctive word, name, symbol, or device to distinguish its products or services from those from any other entity in the marketplace.

The original purpose of a trademark was to indicate the origin of goods and services. Trademarks thus protected the public by preventing mistakes, confusion, or deception by those who would "palm off" their goods as those of another. But it also served to protect the market and reputation (or goodwill) of the producers of goods. As modern markets evolved, trademarks also developed into guarantees of quality as well as potent marketing and advertising devices.

Trademarks as Branding

Consider, for example, the role that Nike's "Swoosh" logo plays in its $106 billion shoe, equipment, and apparel business. In 1971, Nike founder Phil Knight paid graphic design student Carolyn Davidson a mere $35 to design the "Swoosh" logo for the fledgling new company. According to

the Portland *Oregonian* newspaper, when Knight saw her design, he reportedly told her, "I don't love it, but maybe it will grow on me." Nike attorneys nonetheless registered the logo with the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) on June 18, 1971.[1]

Today, this one logo is estimated to be worth as much as $20 billion, and is recognized around the world as a symbol of Nike's quality workmanship and design. Indeed, its vital role in protecting Nike's market share and reputation explains why the company so strenuously protects its trademark rights from being infringed by counterfeiters. As for design student Carolyn Davidson, Phil Knight gave her Nike stock in 1983 that is today worth more than $850,000.

Nike billboard displaying the famous Nike "swoosh." Licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0 via flickr.

Trademarks vs. Other Intellectual Property Rights

Trademarks share with other intellectual property rights the power to encourage and reward creative enterprise. Trademarks also share with patent rights and copyrights the public policy goal of marshaling the benefits of creative endeavor—in this case, the distinctive branding of one's products and services from those of others—to the public good. They do this by protecting the consumer from deception and encouraging sellers to provide quality products.

But trademarks are different from other intellectual property rights in three key respects. In the first place, the legal foundation for U.S. trademark law comes not from rights expressly enumerated in the Constitution, as is the case

with patent rights and copyrights. Rather, it lies in the Commerce Clause of the Constitution, which gives Congress the authority to regulate interstate commerce and enact whatever necessary and proper legislation is required to do that.

Trademarks are also different from other intellectual property rights in that they are not limited in duration. Patents and copyright are granted only for limited periods of time because society benefits by putting an invention or literary work into the public domain once the inventor or artistic creator has recouped his or her costs of innovation and been rewarded for his or her pioneering endeavor. Trademarks, however, never hinder the sales of other products or services, so they are granted in perpetuity so long as they are not abandoned by the trademark owner.

Trademarks Mean Business

Finally, trademarks exist only in conjunction with commercial activity. An inventor may receive a patent for a new invention and never employ or "practice" that invention in a business or research endeavor. Similarly, an author can receive a copyright for an original literary or artistic work and yet never publish, display, or sell it. A trademark, however, cannot exist by itself, apart from commercial activity.

Trademark	Patents and Copyrights
• The legal foundation comes from the commerce Clause of the Constitution • Not limited in duration • Exists only in conjunction with commercial activity	• The legal foundation comes from rights expressly enumerated in the Constitution • Granted only for limited periods of time • Can exist apart from commercial activity

Thus a trademark cannot be obtained by mere adoption. It can only be acquired through commercial use or in anticipation thereof—i.e., through the sale of goods and services.

Check Your Understanding

Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 5 | Section 4.1

What is the purpose of the intellectual property right we call a trademark?

- ◯ To protect the inventions of businesses
- ◯ To indicate the origin of goods or services
- ◯ To reward businesses for their creative works

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Section 4.2: Early Trademark Systems

After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Discuss the origins of trademarks.
- Analyze examples of early forms of trademarks.

Bronze Age Origins

Scholars of antiquity give Early Bronze Age potters the credit for creating the world's first trademarks by imprinting their works with distinctive markings. We assume that these marks were meant to indicate the origin of a particular work or the identity of its craftsman, but the historical record is not conclusive on this point. But an examination of the potters' seals found on Corinthian artifacts dating to 2000 BC suggests this is a reasonable supposition. Trade and commerce between the tribes and early civilizations of that era were expanding rapidly, and in order to be mutually beneficial, trade requires a certain amount of trust in the provenance and quality of goods. These early potters' trademarks seemed to have served that purpose by distinguishing the goods of quality craftsmen from those of unknown or uncertain sources.

Triangular dagger with solid handle from the Early Bronze Age, a period with some of the earliest examples of trademarks. Image provided via Wikimedia Commons.

Trademarks have always been inextricably bound up with commerce. And as commerce grew and developed over the centuries, so did the use of trademarks. Marks have been found, for example, on works ranging from Egyptian pots to the swords of Roman blacksmiths. But it was in the medieval period, with the emergence of powerful craft guilds, that trademark usage really expanded. Their marks identified a work as being made by a particular guild or member of that guild, and therefore continued the long tradition of identifying the origin of goods. But medieval trademarks also served other functions. They became a means by which guilds could control the quality of work of fellow guild members and, because of a trademark's association with quality, ultimately, a source of competitive advantage in the market.[2] Trademarks thus began to acquire something akin to the existential "moral rights" found in later copyright statutes—i.e., the right of a creator to defend the quality, originality, and "personality" of his or her work.

Trademark use in medieval times also acquired a public interest function. As Arthur R. Miller and Michael H. Davis note in *Intellectual Property: Patents, Trademarks, and Copyright in a Nutshell*, "Statutes dating back as early as the thirteenth century show that [trademark] was eventually recognized as having social consequence. These statutes were meant to protect the public by preventing the sale of unidentified goods whose quality could not be ascertained."

One notable trademark from the time was that of Löwenbräu Brewery, which claims to have used its lion mark since its founding in 1383.[3]

Logo for Löwenbräu Brewery, a historic logo said to have been associated with the brand since inception in 1383. Image provided via Wikimedia Commons.

Early Trademark Cases

Scholars had until only recently attributed the first reported trademark case in Anglo-American law to be *Southern v. How*, which was decided in 1618. This despite the fact that the case involved not a trademark but the sale of counterfeit jewels.[4] Its connection to trademark came from a reference by the presiding judge to an earlier, unnamed, and unreported case in 1584 involving a suit brought by a cloth maker against another cloth maker who had used his mark. That earlier clothier case, only recently discovered and now known as *Sanforth's Case*, is now held to be the earliest reported trademark case in Anglo-American law. It establishes beyond a doubt that even 250 years before the Industrial Revolution, trademark infringement was viewed as a tort of deceit and a violation of the laws against unfair competition.[5]

To quote from a contemporary 1656 legal report:

> "The action upon the case was brought in the [Court of] Common Pleas by a clothier, that whereupon he had gained great reputation for his making of his cloth … to his benefit and profit, and that he used to set his mark on his cloth whereby it should be known to be his

> cloth; and another clothier, observing it, used the same mark to his ill-made cloth [in order] to deceive him."

In the more than four centuries since then, as commerce and industry have evolved into an $80 *trillion* a year global marketplace unimaginable to the people of *Sanforth's Case* time, its verdict that trademark infringement is competition most unfair and demands redress still serves as the foundation and wellspring of worldwide trademark policies and statutes today.

Check Your Understanding

Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 4 | Section 4.2

Why did trademarks not emerge until the start of widespread trade in the Bronze Age?

- ◯ There was no government agency to register trademarks before that time.
- ◯ That was when written records of trademarks could be printed.
- ◯ Widespread trade requires a certain level of public trust in the provenance and quality of goods, which trademarks helped to build.

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Section 4.3: U.S. Trademark Law

After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Grasp the basics of trademark law.
- Analyze notable trademark cases.

As the young United States rapidly developed its commerce and industry in the late eighteenth and early nineteenth centuries, propelled in no small part by the nation's unusually democratic and effective patent laws (see Chapter 1, "Section 1.5: What the U.S. Patent System Wrought"), the states developed increasingly sophisticated and complex trademark laws. Eventually, however, the transformation of America's many local and regional markets into a single, unified, national economy propelled Congress to try to federalize trademark law despite the lack of any express constitutional authority to do so. So Congress passed the first national trademark laws in 1870 and 1876. But in a set of three court challenges consolidated into a single appeal before the U.S. Supreme Court in 1879, Justice Samuel Freeman Miller ruled for the majority that the *Patent and Copyright Clause* of the Constitution gave Congress no explicit authority to regulate trademarks, and declared the 1870 and 1876 trademark laws unconstitutional.[6]

The Commerce Clause and the Lanham Act of 1946

Two years later, Congress instead acted under the *Commerce Clause* of the Constitution to pass the Trade Mark Act of 1881. This first national trademark law, however, only regulated trademarks used in commerce with other nations and with Indian tribes. It wasn't until 1905 that Congress passed another trademark statute regulating the use of marks within the United States.

Those two trademark laws were subsequently overhauled by the Lanham Act of 1946, which remains the principal law of the land on trademarks in the United States to this day.[7] It broadened national registration of trademarks, and also gave owners of unregistered marks access for the first time to the federal courts. The act also established remedies such as bars on the sale or importation of infringing products, and required the renewal of trademarks every ten years to weed out the registry trademarks that are no longer in commercial use (known as the "deadwood" prevision).[8]

After 119 years in business, for example, the world-famous retailer Woolworth's went bankrupt in 1997 and its trademark was no longer protected. The 83-year-old Hostess Twinkies brand, however, was acquired by two private equity firms for $410 million because they see future profit in the iconic brand—and the customers who love it.

A waitress at a lunch counter at Woolworth's, the world-famous retailer that ceased operations and abandoned its trademark. Licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0 via flickr.

Requirements for a U.S. Trademark

The requirement that a trademark must be actively used or intended to be used in commercial activity in order to be protected by law has been a fundamental feature of U.S. trademark law since its inception. The Lanham Act specifically requires applicants to submit "a verified statement that the mark is in use in commerce, specifying the date of the applicant's first use of the mark in commerce and those goods or services specified in the notice of allowance on or in connection with which the mark is used in commerce."[9] A trademark is presumed to have been abandoned when its owner ceases to use it for three or more years, after which anyone else can register and use the mark.

Check Your Understanding

Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 5 | Section 4.3

What caused U.S. trademark laws to evolve from a patchwork of state laws into a unitary federal trademark system?

- ◯ The Industrial Revolution transformed America's many local and regional markets into a unified national economy.
- ◯ Producers of goods and services began to grow into national entities.
- ◯ State laws often conflicted with each other.
- ◯ All of the above

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

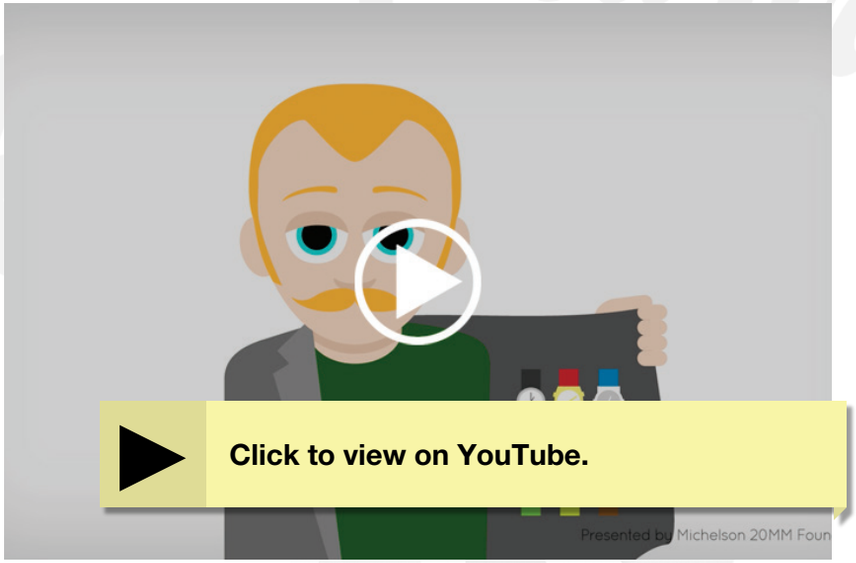
Section 4.4: The Four Types of Trademarks

After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Identify the four types of trademarks.
- Compare differences between types of trademarks.

Can I Trademark That?

Before reading this section, please watch this overview video covering the four types of trademarks and what they are used for, the subject matter of trademarks, and why trademarks are important — not just to their owners, but even more so, to the general public.



The term "trademark" is usually used to describe any of the four types of marks that can be registered with the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office. The two primary types of marks are

trademarks and service marks. The two other marks—certification marks and collective marks—occur much less frequently and must meet different requirements for registration.[10]

Trademarks

Trademarks identify *products*—i.e., physical goods and commodities—that are either manufactured, produced, grown, or that exist naturally. A trademark is a word, name, symbol, or device—or combination of these—used to identify and distinguish the source of that product. Examples of trademarks include the Nike "Swoosh" symbol, the arched "M" for McDonalds, and the apple symbol with a small curved bite taken out of it for Apple Computer.

Service Marks

Service marks are exactly the same in principle as trademarks except that these words, names, symbols, or devices identify and distinguish the source of a *service*. Examples of service marks include the sleek silver greyhound dog on Greyhound buses, and United Parcel Service's brown shield emblazoned with the bold yellow letters "UPS."

Certification Marks

A certification mark is any word, phrase, symbol, or design—or a combination of any of these—owned by one party that certifies the goods and services of others when they meet certain standards or requirements.[11] A certification mark identifies either the *nature* of a product or service—for example, that it meets the quality standards needed to receive the "Good Housekeeping Seal of Approval"—or the *origin* of products or services, as in the certification mark "Washington State" given to apples grown in that state.

Collective Marks

Collective marks come in one of two varieties: collective trademarks and service marks, and collective membership marks. A collective trade

or service mark is any word, phrase, symbol, or design that is owned by a cooperative, association, collective group, or organization and is used by its members to indicate the source of goods or services.[12] An example of a collective trademark is the "Girl Scouts" mark seen on cookies every February, or the designation "CPA" to identify the services provided by a Certified Public Accountant.

A collective membership mark, by contrast, is used to indicate that a person is a member of some organization, such as a trade union or an association like the Rotary Club, but is not used to identify the source of goods and services.

Slide shows available in free iBooks version, click to download.

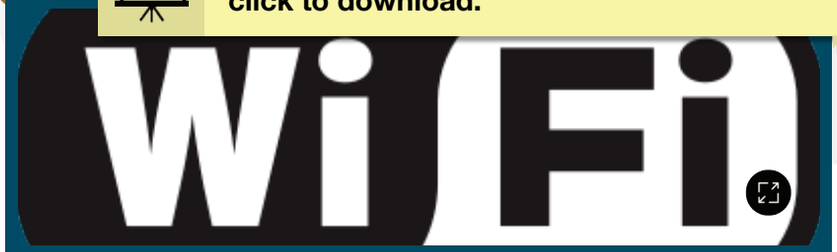


Image of the certification mark for the Wi-Fi Alliance, which indicates that devices relating to wireless local area networks have met certain quality standards set by the Alliance. Image provided via Wikimedia Commons.

Types of Trademarks

Collective Marks A certification mark is used by organizations to show that a product or service meets certain standards or requirements, identifying either the nature or origin of that product or service.

Check Your Understanding

Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 4 | Section 4.4

Of the four individual types of marks, what does a trademark identify?

- ◯ Services provided to either consumers or other businesses
- ◯ Physical goods or commodities that are manufactured, produced, grown, or that exist naturally
- ◯ Both of the above

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Section 4.5: The Subject Matter of Trademarks

After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Learn the subject matter of trademarks.
- Analyze characteristics of various forms of trademarks.

As discussed, there are four types of trademarks: trademarks, service marks, certification marks, and collective marks. But what does it mean to say that a trademark may be a "word [or phrase], name, symbol [or design], or device." The answers may in some cases surprise you.

Words, Phrases, and Names

There is little confusion about what is meant by a trademarkable *word*, *phrase*, or *name*. The only point to remember here is that words, names, and phrases that are simply descriptive of the goods or services with which they are associated do not necessarily qualify for registration as a trademark.[13] They must be distinctive and indicate the *origin* of a product or service. What is meant by distinctive—and how distinctive they must be—will be discussed in the next section.

Symbols and Devices

Symbols and *devices* are where things start to get interesting in trademark law. The language of the Lanham Act does not specify what is meant by a "symbol" or a "device" that can

be trademarked. The U.S. Supreme Court took careful note of that fact, ruling in 1995 that, "Since human beings might use as a 'symbol' or 'device' almost anything at all that is capable of carrying meaning, this language, read literally, is not restrictive."[14]

In the United States, therefore, trademarks can include almost anything that carries distinctive meaning and identifies the origin of products and services. This includes slogans, letters, numbers, logos, three-dimensional designs—even colors, scents, and sounds that indicate the source of a good or service to consumers.[15]

The trademark for Chanel No. 5 perfume, an example of when a number can in fact receive trademark protection. Image used under CC BY 2.0.

A trademarkable symbol can be a *number*. The number 5, for example, is a trademarked symbol of Chanel No. 5 perfume (No. 73788555). So is the number 31, which is the trademarked symbol of Baskin-Robbins 31 Flavors (No. 72172718).

No trademark can block the use of the numbers 5 or 31 in math. Nor have the courts allowed the trademarking of mere part numbers,[16] model numbers,[17] or grades,[18] because these are not distinctive enough and do not indicate the origin of the goods in question. Regular gas, also known as "87 octane," also cannot be trademarked because it doesn't tell you whether that gas comes from Exxon, Shell, or BP.

Yet despite the above, one of the most iconic trademarked numbers is 501. Originally, the number 501 was simply the lot number Levi's assigned to the famous copper-riveted waist overalls. But over time, 501 acquired

meaning in the minds of consumers and came to be very strongly associated with *Levi's* brand jeans. How otherwise un-trademarkable symbols (or words and designs) can acquire secondary (trademark) meaning will be discussed in the next section.

A label for Levi's "501" jeans, another example of a number that gained trademark protection. Image provided via Wikimedia Commons.

As for *scents*, the fundamental case for trademarking these came about when the USPTO denied Celia Clarke's request in 1990 for a trademark for scented yarns and threads with a "fresh, floral fragrance reminiscent of Plumeria blossoms." She appealed, and the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board overruled the examiner, granting her a trademark for the scent.

"[F]ragrance is not an inherent attribute or natural characteristic of applicant's goods but is rather a feature supplied by applicant," the board noted. "Moreover, applicant has emphasized this characteristic of her goods in advertising, promoting the scented feature of her goods. Applicant has demonstrated that customers, dealers and distributors of her scented yarns and threads have come to recognize applicant as the source of these goods. . . . In her advertisements and at craft fairs, applicant has promoted her products as having a scented nature. We believe that applicant has presented a prima facie case of distinctiveness of her fragrance mark."[19]

On the other hand, a trademark cannot be granted for any scent that serves a function other than identifying the product's source. The scent of perfumes and air fresheners, therefore, cannot be

registered, nor can the sulfurous smell that serves as a warning for natural gas leaks.

Still, there remains a good deal of uncertainty about when a scent is trademarkable and when it is not. Consider the world-famous Cinnabon smell—that sweet, sugary, cinnamon-infused scent that is absolutely unmistakable (if not also irresistible). But it is not trademarked because even though it is certainly distinctive, it cannot be easily distinguished from the smell of cinnamon buns made by any number of other bakeries.

Sounds can also be trademarked provided they indicate the source of the product or service with which they are associated, and indeed, there are approximately 700 trademarked sounds registered at the USPTO.[20] These include Tarzan's Yell, the THX theme heard at the beginning of a movie, MGM's roaring lion, America Online's "You've got mail" announcement, the sequence of chimes heard with the display of the NBC logo on TV, and, naturally, the sound of a duck quacking "Aflac!" for the American Family Life Assurance Company.

Designs and Trade Dress

A *design*, like a logo, can also be trademarked, provided it distinguishes the origin of the product or service from any other source or producer. In these trademarks, the logo must be unique and consist of more than simple stylization.

The orange-flavored Geogri brand vodka, for example, used a stylized "O" on its label, and sued

The Pepsi logo has been tweaked a few times since 1969 but the overall design has remained recognizable and distinct. Image under CC BY 2.0.

Bacardi for using a similar stylized "O" on its label for orange-flavored vodka. The court ruled against Geogri, however, because its design consisted merely of a stylized symbol that had not acquired a distinguishing (or secondary) meaning in the minds of consumers that enabled them to identify the producer.[21]

Examples of pure trademarked designs, without any associated words, include Nike's "Swoosh" and Apple's famous logo of an apple with a bite taken out of it.

This is why design trademarks often take a "design plus words" approach, as in the trademarked Lacoste logo featuring the word "Lacoste" above the famous green alligator.

Trade dress, on the other hand, refers to the *overall appearance* of a product or service that indicates its source. Trade dress can include features such as size, shape, color or color combinations, texture, graphics, or even particular sales techniques. The key to claiming trade dress protection is that the attributes must be distinctive. For example, Taco Cabana has trademarked its distinctive and "festive eating atmosphere having interior dining and patio areas decorated with artifacts, bright colors, paintings and murals," and won an infringement case against a competitor restaurant called Two Pesos. By creating a theme that was similar to Taco Cabana, Two Pesos created confusion in the minds of consumers.[22]

A design trademark may be one part of a product's trade dress, but it is distinct from trade dress because it only covers the stylization of words, letters, numbers, or of a specific design like the Lacoste green alligator.

Imagine that an Apple competitor opened a retail store with the same colors, lighting, atmosphere, and overall look and feel as the Apple store but sold their own products. The goal would not be to stop the sale of the goods, which are not necessarily infringing any of Apple's design trademarks or patents, but to stop the competitor from infringing the look and feel of the

Image of a vintage Coca-Cola bottle, known for its distinct shape. Replicating this shape could violate Coca-Cola's trade dress rights. Image licensed under CC BY 2.0 via flickr.

Apple store. In this case, Apple would file a trade dress suit.

Both design trademarks and trade dress are different from design patents. Although all three cover only *nonfunctional* designs and appearances, design patents strictly protect only the new and original ornamental design of an article of manufacture, and the actual drawing of a design patent limits what is protected. A design trademark, on the other hand, protects a particular word, name, symbol, or design used in commerce to distinguish a product's source. And trade dress protects the overall appearance of the product and can include anything that gives a product or service meaning and distinguishes it from those of any other producer.

A design patent might protect the new and original ornamental design of a lamp, for example, so long as that appearance does not affect the lamp's function. A design trademark would protect the words or symbols used on the lamp that identify it as coming from a particular producer. And trade dress protects the overall "look and feel" of the lamp.

Sometimes both forms of protection can be obtained, providing an extra advantage to the owner of these rights. Examples of products with both design trademarks and design patents include the *Dustbuster* vacuum cleaner, the *Pepsi* bottle, and the *Honeywell* round thermostat.

Check Your Understanding

Drag & Drop | Question 1 of 4 | Section 4.5

A trademark may be a word (or phrase), name, symbol, or device. Which of these do the following trademarks represent?

Chanel handbags

The MGM lion's roar

Tiffany's blue color

The power-on chime in Apple's Mac computers

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Section 4.6: The Spectrum of Distinctiveness

After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Discover the elements of distinctiveness within trademarks.
- Identify the various kinds of marks used.

The fundamental and overriding requirement for a trademark is **distinctiveness**. The requirement for distinctiveness is analogous to the requirement for *novelty* in patent rights and *originality* in copyright. Without distinctiveness, there can be no trademark.

As Miller and Davis note, "Naturally, a trademark must be distinctive if it is to serve the function of identifying the origin of goods and thereby avoid confusion, deception, or mistake. If a trademark is to protect purchasers from confusion over what they are purchasing, then the trademark somehow must be recognizable, identifiable, and different from other marks."[23]

Some trade and service marks achieve distinction via their inherent nature—Nike's curved "Swoosh" check mark suggesting speed and agility, for example.

But other marks gain distinctiveness as a result of marketing, eventually forming a powerful association over time in the minds of consumers. As an example, the term "Raisin Bran" is merely descriptive of the foods used in the cereal and would not be eligible for trademark registration had Kellogg

Company not demonstrated through evidence of use (including sales, advertising expenditures, and consumer surveys) that the buying public had come to distinctively associate Raisin Bran with this particular Kellogg's cereal.

The public's distinct association of a trademark to a company is known as secondary meaning, and that is something that can only be established over time. An understanding of secondary meaning is crucial when discussing the **spectrum of distinctiveness**.

In *Abercrombie & Fitch Co. v. Hunting World, Inc.* in 1976, Judge Henry Jacob Friendly established five basic categories of marks along a spectrum of distinctiveness, ranging from "fanciful" marks that are inherently distinctive on one end and on the other end "generic" marks that are never distinctive and thus not eligible for trademark registration.[24]

Fanciful Marks

Fanciful marks are invented words, symbols, or devices that have no relation to the good or service being sold and have no meaning other than to distinctly identify the product or service and distinguish it in the minds of consumers from those of any other vendor. "Xerox" is a good example of a fanciful mark, as are "Google" and "Kodak." Fanciful marks are considered the strongest type of mark and are prima facie registrable with the USPTO.

Arbitrary Marks

Arbitrary marks are real words in common usage that have no descriptive relationship to the product or service being sold. Examples of arbitrary marks include "Apple" (for the computer company), "Oracle" (for the software company), and "Galaxy" (for the mobile phone). Arbitrary marks are also unreservedly eligible for trademark registration.

Suggestive Marks

Suggestive marks are marks that suggest or imply a quality or characteristic of the goods and services being sold. They require imagination,

insight, or perception on the part of the consumer as to the nature of the article.[25] Examples include "iPad" for the tablet computer and "Coppertone" for the sunscreen lotion.

A suggestive mark is the minimum required for a mark to be unconditionally registrable absent a secondary meaning. Or in the words of Judge Friendly, "The validity of the mark ends where *suggestion* ends and *description* begins."[26] From this point on along the spectrum of distinctiveness, things get a bit tricky.

Descriptive Marks

A **descriptive mark** explicitly describes the purpose, nature, or an attribute of a product or service and is, therefore, not eligible for trademark registration unless a secondary meaning or association has been developed in the public's mind through usage.[27] Ineligible descriptive marks include "Lightweight" and "Faster." However, if a descriptive mark takes on a secondary meaning in the public mind—"Sharp" televisions, for example, or "Windows" for windowing software—then it can be eligible for trademark registration.

The bar against descriptive marks is designed to protect for public use common concepts and language that everyone needs to use. Imagine having to pay the coiner of the term "reverse mortgage" every time you wanted to describe such a financial arrangement. It would create a nightmare of social costs, which can be prevented simply by allowing the descriptive term to remain in the public domain. The bar against descriptive marks spotlights the overall social purpose of trademarks, which is to prevent fraud and confusion in the market while not conferring a monopoly on anyone.

Generic Marks

The last and least distinctive category of marks are **generic marks** that are simply the common name for the goods and services being sold. Examples of generic marks might be "Aspirin" for the analgesic, or the use of the word "Baskets" for a

basket store without any accompanying logo or other design element to distinguish from a merely generic description of the items sold. A generic mark is never eligible for registration no matter how much evidence a mark owner offers that it has acquired a secondary meaning through advertising and marketing.

Ironically, a product or service can become so successful in the marketplace that the public begins to associate its trademark with an entire category of similar products and services. When this happens, a valid trademark can become a generic name and the trademark will be lost, as happened with both "Cellophane" and "Aspirin." To prevent this from happening, companies like "Kleenex," "Xerox," and more recently "Google" have gone to great legal and advertising expense to prevent the generic misuse of their trademarks so these remain valid.

There are many companies that sell aspirin, but aspirin itself can no longer be trademarked.

Adobe, for example, sent emails to many web authors advising them to discontinue using the term "photoshopped" and instead say that their photos were "modified by Adobe Photoshop software." Similarly, Xerox spent heavily on advertisements warning that "you cannot Xerox a document, but you can copy it on a Xerox brand copying machine."

Slide Show

Slide shows available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Official logo for Windows software. Image provided via Wikimedia Commons.

Descriptive Marks Descriptive marks explicitly describes the purpose, nature, or an attribute of a product or service and are not eligible for trademark registration unless a secondary meaning or association has been developed in the public's mind through usage, like Windows computer software.

Check Your Understanding

Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 6 | Section 4.6

What is the trademark world's corollary to novelty in patents?

- ◯ Non-obviousness
- ◯ Distinctiveness
- ◯ Originality

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Section 4.7: Bars to Trademark

After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Identify the bars to trademark.
- Dissect criteria for trademark registration.

The Prior Use Bar

No one can register a trademark if it has been used by other parties prior to its use by the applicant. Indeed, if the applicant uses such a mark, he or she may be liable for trademark infringement.[28] The only exception to the prior use bar is when the mark has been used in an entirely different market or field of business, as in the trademark "Progressive" granted to two companies, one a backpack manufacturer and the other an auto insurance company.

The Functionality Bar

To be trademarked, no word, symbol, design, device, scent, or sound may purely or primarily serve a functional purpose. Nor can it be trademarked if its absence in or on the product inflates its cost or reduces its quality.[29]

Thus as noted earlier, the scent of a perfume cannot be trademarked because the core requirement of a perfume is that it have a pleasant and distinctive smell.

The design of a chair presents an interesting dilemma, however. Does the design enable a person to sit—i.e., does it have a functional purpose? Or does the design distinctively mark an otherwise

perfectly functional chair as coming from an identifiable producer?

This "chicken and egg" question has confronted many applicants, trademark examiners, judges, and juries over the years. The issue is usually decided by asking whether the appearance of a product or its components is inspired more by design or by function?

The issue is most easily decided when the functionality of an item resides in a specific part of the product, and the design elements are found in other parts of the product. A great example of this is the "A Christmas Story Leg Lamp" based on the classic 1983 film comedy. The functional part of the lamp is its electronics and light fixture sitting atop the base. The base, however, is in the shape of a woman's stocking-clad leg, and is thus clearly a design feature that distinguishes the lamp from any other on the market, and it is trademarked (No. 77105065).

Subject Matter Bars

In addition to prior use and functionality, certain kinds of subject matter are generally not eligible for trademark registration. These are surnames, geographic marks, and ornamental, immoral, or offensive marks.[30]

Surnames or family names such as "Smith" and "Johnson" cannot be trademarked except under certain conditions. The USPTO assesses five factors in determining whether a surname is eligible for a trademark:

- Whether the surname is rare
- Whether the term is the surname of anyone connected with the applicant
- Whether the term has any recognized meaning other than as a surname
- Whether it has the "look and feel" of a surname
- Whether the stylization of lettering is distinctive enough to create a separate commercial impression[31]

"If the mark's character as a surname predominates in terms of its 'primary significance to the purchasing public,' then it is prohibited," write Miller and Davis.[32] But over time, if the surname becomes associated in the public mind with the distinctive origin of products or services, then it may be eligible for a trademark, as is the case with "Sears" and "Macy's."

Macy's the brand name of the department store chain—is an example of a surname that has become eligible for trademark protection. Licensed under CC BY 2.0 via flickr.

Geographic marks must also be evaluated for eligibility on the basis of several factors. If a geographic mark is simply *descriptive*, the following tests apply:

The primary significance of the mark is a generally known geographic location.

The goods or services originate in the place identified in the mark.

Purchasers would be likely to believe that the goods or services originate in the geographic place identified in the mark.[33]

The test above determines whether there is a literal association to the name or not. For example, if an entrepreneur launches a company called "Los Angeles Shoes" to produce shoes in Los Angeles, the name would not pass the test for trademark eligibility because the primary significance of the mark is that it is a generally known location, the product is produced in the location stated in the mark, and consumers would believe the shoes were made in Los Angeles.

The goal of the bar against geographically *descriptive* marks, then, is to protect one party from seizing ownership of a geographic term that ought to remain in the public domain.

If a geographic mark is deceptively *misdescriptive*, however, the test is as follows:

- The primary significance of the mark is a generally known geographic location.
- The goods or services do not originate in the place identified in the mark.
- Purchasers would be likely to believe that the goods or services originate in the geographic place identified in the mark.
- The misrepresentation is a material factor in a significant portion of the relevant consumer's decision to buy the goods or use the services.[34]

The goal of this test for geographically *misdescriptive* marks is to prevent the confusion and deception of the consumer. For example, if an entrepreneur launches a fashionable shoe business called "New York Shoes" but actually manufactures the shoes in China, he will not receive a trademark for the name because it will likely confuse or deceive consumers.

Sometimes, however, a geographic name may be trademarked, as was the case with the online retailing giant's trademark "Amazon." In this case, the geographic name "Amazon" is not indicative of the source of goods, nor are consumers under the impression that the goods sold by the retailer come from the Amazonian region of South America. In addition, the geographic nature of the name "Amazon" is not a significant factor in whether or not consumers decide to purchase books, clothing, electronics, or anything else from the company.

Nor can *ornamental*, *immoral*, or *offensive* marks be trademarked. Ornamental marks such as a "smiley face" logo are merely decorative and are too vague to distinguish the origin of a product or service. Immoral or offensive marks—e.g., an online dating service with a logo depicting two naked people having sex—also cannot be registered.

Check Your Understanding

Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 2 | Section 4.7

What are some of the bars to getting a trademark?

- ◯ The prior use bar
- ◯ The functionality bar
- ◯ Subject matter bars
- ◯ All of the above

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

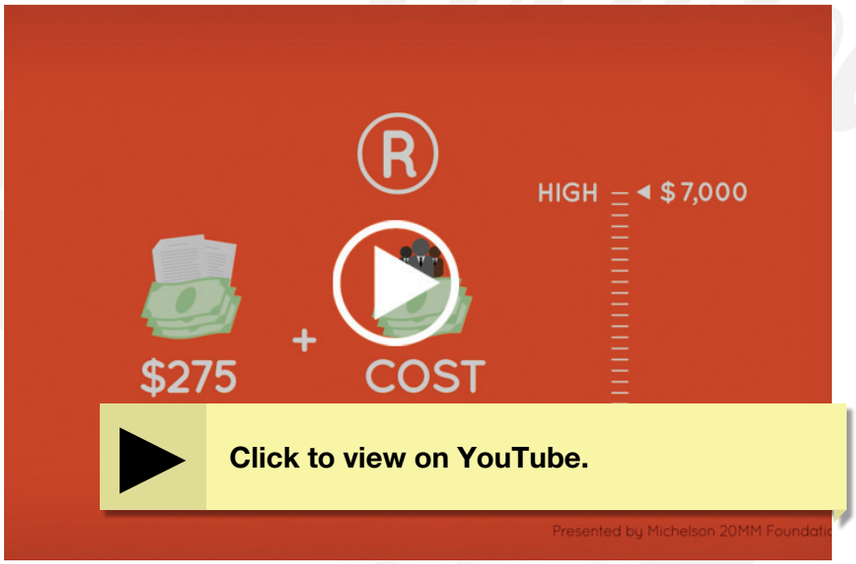
Section 4.8: Establishing Trademark Protection

After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Identify the reasons for establishing trademark registration.
- Understand the process of trademark protection.

Establishing Your Trademark Protection

Before reading this section, please watch this overview video covering the "spectrum of distinctiveness" and other fancy-sounding legal terms and what they really mean in the real world of commerce and consumerism.



As in the case with copyrights, trademarks do not necessarily have to be registered with the federal government, but doing so has benefits. The owners of unregistered trademarks have the exclusive right to use the mark concerning similar goods

and services in the geographic area of actual use of the mark, the right to bring civil action against infringers, and protection against false advertising. Unregistered trademarks are usually identified by the "TM" symbol displayed on the product, package, or advertising used to promote them. Trademarks formally registered with the USPTO, however, receive additional benefits:

- A legal presumption of ownership of the mark and exclusive right to use the mark nationwide on or in connection with the goods/services listed in the registration
- Public notice of claim of ownership of the mark
- The ability to bring an action concerning the mark in federal court.
- The use of the U.S. registration as a basis to obtain registration in foreign countries
- The ability to record the U.S. registration with the U.S. Customs and Border Protection (CBP) Service to prevent importation of infringing foreign goods
- The right to use the federal registration symbol ®
- Listing in the United States Patent and Trademark Office's online databases[35]

Because registration costs money, many small businesses choose to rely upon the common law protections afforded trademarks, especially when just starting up. A case in point was Google, which used an unregistered trademark for its first six years in operation. Only in 2006 did the company formally apply for a registered trademark for "Google." It was registered in 2012.

But trademark protection can be vital to a small business, as one recent case amply demonstrates. Payam "Peter" Tabibian first registered the 1950s-style red, white, and yellow logo for his start-up Z-Burger chain in 2007, a few months before he opened his first restaurant the next year in a hip Washington neighborhood. As the *New York Times* reported, "his first restaurant was an immediate hit, attracting students from nearby American University. The place [later]

drew public praise when it gave free food to federal workers who were furloughed from their jobs during government budget cutbacks."

But Mr. Tabibian eventually fell out with his partners, who then tried to stop him from continuing to use his Z-Burger brand with his expanding chain of restaurants; they also demanded he transfer the trademarks to them.

Image of a Z-Burger truck, showcasing the distinctive red, white, and yellow logo. Licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0 via flickr.

But because Mr. Tabibian had done his homework and taken the time to properly register his trademarks, a federal judge ruled in August of 2015 that he was the legitimate owner of the trademarks and could continue to use them.

As James Gibson, law professor at the University of Richmond School of Law, told the *New York Times*, the Z-Burger case shows why "it is very important early on to pick a trademark that's going to work, and make sure ownership is sewn on. That's particularly true if nobody knows who you are and you're operating in a limited area. The federal trademark gives you a lot of nationwide rights."

In order for your trademark to be eligible for registration with the USPTO, however, you must actually use it in conjunction with commercial activity—i.e., with the marketing and sale of products and services—or be about to use it within six months. Absent the selling of athletic shoes and other sports attire, Nike's $20 billion "Swoosh" logo would be nothing more than a worthless doodle.

When applying for trademark registration, the applicant must file an affidavit attesting to the date the mark was first used in commerce as well as a specimen showing how the mark was first used, whether in advertising or on the product in a store setting. It is imperative that the applicant identify the earliest provable date of first use in commerce, to lessen the likelihood that another party can claim prior use of that mark and invalidate the trademark.

The USPTO also offers an "intent-to-use" application, which allows an entity to apply for a trademark that is not yet used in commerce.

"If you have not yet used the mark but plan to do so in the future, you may file based on a good faith or bona fide intent to use the mark in commerce," notes a USPTO publication. "A bona fide intent to use the mark is more than an idea, [but] less than market ready. For example, having a business plan, creating sample products, or performing other initial business activities may reflect a bona fide intent to use the mark."[36]

The mark must then be put into use within six months of receiving a "notice of allowance" from the USPTO or the applicant risks having to pay extension fees or losing the mark entirely.

If the trademark is still in commercial use five years after registration, the owner is eligible to receive an additional protection known as "incontestability," which immunizes the mark from many challenges, including challenges to validity, ownership, registration, and descriptiveness. (Incontestable marks can still be challenged on some grounds, such as genericism, functionality, and abandonment.) To receive incontestability status, a § 15 Declaration must be submitted to the USPTO.

Once incontestability is achieved, no one can contest the validity, ownership, or registration of the mark, nor can anyone contest the owner's exclusive right to use the mark. An individual or a corporate entity can register a mark.

A trademark can be assigned to others in the event of purchase or acquisition by another entity.

The §15 Declaration must include:

1. The registration number and the date of registration
2. The fee for each class of goods/services in the registration to which the Declaration pertains
3. A statement that declares:
   - The mark has been in continuous use in commerce for a period of five years and is still in use in commerce
   - No final decision exists adverse to the owner's claim of ownership of the mark for the goods/services, or to the owner's right to register the mark or to keep the same on the register
   - No pending proceeding exists involving the claimed rights in the USPTO or in the courts
4. A signed and dated affidavit or declaration under 37 C.F.R. §2.20[37]

There are other reasons why an owner might assign trademarks to another party, including a business name change, a security agreement, a license, a lien, as collateral for a loan, or as a result of a bankruptcy procedure. Ford used its trademarks as collateral for a $23.5 billion loan. Ford was still able to use its trademarks, but if the company had defaulted on the loan, the trademarks would have been assigned to the lender.[38]

Just like tangible assets, trademarks and other intellectual property such as patents and copyrights often have enormous value. In fact, some sources estimate that in contrast to 40 years ago, when plant, equipment, and other tangible assets comprised 80 percent of the market value of most public

The official logo of the Ford Motor Company. Ford was still able to keep its trademarks, as long as it didn't default on the loan. Licensed under CC BY 2.0 via flickr.

companies, today it is intangible assets like intellectual property, business methods, and know-how that make up roughly 80 percent of the value of public companies.[39]

Trademarks can also be licensed to others. In 2012, licensed trademarks generated $5.45 billion for North American owners, reported the Licensing Industry Merchandisers' Association. That same year, the top 150 global brand licensors earned $230 billion in sales of trademarked products, with the Walt Disney Company alone accounting for nearly $40 billion in sales.

Abandonment of a mark results in loss of ownership and the associated rights of the mark. For a mark to be considered abandoned, it must be discontinued from active use in commerce with no intent to resume the commercial use of the mark. Evidence of nonuse for three consecutive years is usually considered to be sufficient proof of abandonment. Upon abandonment, the trademark owner loses the right to prevent others from infringing the mark.

Check Your Understanding

Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 3 | Section 4.8

As with copyrights, trademarks do not have to be registered with the federal government, but doing so gives their owners all of the following additional rights EXCEPT for which one?

- ◯ The exclusive right to use the mark in their geographic area of business
- ◯ The ability to seek assistance from the U.S. Customs and Border Protection Service in preventing the importation of infringing foreign goods
- ◯ The exclusive right to use the mark nationwide
- ◯ The right to use the federal registration symbol ® instead of the ™ symbol.

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Section 4.9: Trademark Infringement

After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Identify the factors involved in trademark infringement.
- Understand the basis for determining similarity.

Trademark Infringement and Remedies

Before reading this section, please watch this overview video covering similarity, market confusion, vicarious infringement, and getting back what's yours.

The purpose of trademarks is to enable consumers to distinguish the source of products and services as well as help businesses defend the quality and reputation of those goods. Trademarks benefit society by protecting consumers and businesses alike, and

by preventing confusion in the marketplace. This principle lies at the heart of the trademark system.

It is also the basis on which the courts rule on claims of trademark infringement. The most common way that trademark infringement causes confusion is through **similarity**. In the words of the Lanham Act, no trademark may be registered "which so resembles" another name or mark that it will be likely "to cause confusion, or to cause mistake, or to deceive."[40]

To determine similarity, the mark must be evaluated as a whole rather than through its individual components. This is important because there are only a limited number of parts—words, names, shapes, symbols, or devices—that can be used separately or together to create a unique and distinctive trademark that indicates the origin of goods.

The courts generally look at five key factors to determine if a defendant's use of your mark is likely to cause confusion among consumers.

The two most important are:

- The similarity in the overall impression created by the two marks (including the marks' look, phonetic similarities, and underlying meanings)
- The similarities of the goods and services involved

But the court also looks at three other factors:

- The strength of your mark
- Any evidence of actual confusion by consumers
- The intent of the defendant in adopting its mark

The basis for determining similarity, again, is not an assessment of the similarity between each component of two trademarks but of their totality as seen and experienced by the consumer. And the key test for similarity is *resemblance*, not *sameness*. In short, two marks do not have to be exact mirror images of each other to be legally similar. According to a 2003 decision by the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit, "Similarity is not a binary factor but is a matter of degree."[41] Each and every

attribute of a mark need not be replicated exactly by those of another mark to be deemed similar. But the more one mark's attributes are similar to those of another, the greater the likelihood that there is legal similarity between the marks as a whole.

The social networking site LinkedIn, for example, sports a logo made up of the joined words "Linked" and "in" displayed in a white font with the "in" component surrounded by a blue colored square with rounded edges. If a new networking site for professionals was launched that featured a logo with the same words except that the "in" component was surrounded by a red colored square, there would likely be enough similarity between the two logos to justify a case for infringement. The colors of one component of the logo may be different, but when the concept, wording, font style, and design are considered as a whole, any judge or jury would probably find the similarity between the marks so substantial as to constitute infringement.

But similarity is not the only basis for assessing infringement. The question is also whether any similarity between marks is likely to cause confusion in the minds of consumers. This takes into account such factors as the similarity of the goods and services on which the two marks are being used. If a company that made metal chains called itself "LinkedIn," that would less likely cause consumers to believe that the chains came from the same source as the social networking site, because the manufacture of chains is a very different line of business than running a social networking site.

An entity can be guilty of *contributory infringement* if it intentionally encourages the infringement of a valid mark by a third party. One can also be liable for contributory infringement if one continues to produce or distribute a product with knowledge that the beneficiary is infringing a mark. As the Supreme Court held in the 1982 case *Inwood Labs., Inc. v. Ives Labs., Inc.*, "If a manufacturer or distributor intentionally induces another to infringe a trademark, or if it continues to supply its product to one whom it knows or has reason to know is engaging in trademark infringement, the manufacturer or distributor is contributorily responsible for any harm done as a result of the deceit."[42]

> *"If a manufacturer or distributor intentionally induces another to infringe a trademark, or if it continues to supply its product to one whom it knows or has reason to know is engaging in trademark infringement, the manufacturer or distributor is contributorily responsible for any harm done as a result of the deceit."*[43]
>
> -Inwood Labs., Inc. v. Ives Labs., Inc.

Another type of infringement is *vicarious infringement*. The definition of vicarious infringement is somewhat convoluted, but Cornell University's Legal Information Institute describes it thusly:

> "A person may be held liable for the infringing acts committed by another if he or she had the right and ability to control the infringing activities and had a direct financial interest in such activities. The existence of direct infringement is required to establish a claim of vicarious infringement; however, it is not necessary for the alleged infringer to have intent or knowledge of the infringement."[44]

Vicarious infringement most often occurs on Internet sites that allow outside parties to post or upload files. One such example was *Sega Enters., Ltd. v. MAPHIA*, in which third parties uploaded unauthorized games that displayed the Sega mark to the Maphia site with the knowledge and consent of—and to the profit of—Maphia owners.

Finally, there is a form of harm called **trademark dilution**, which is described by the International Trademark Association as "the weakening of a famous mark's ability to identify and distinguish goods or services, regardless of competition in the marketplace or the likelihood of confusion. Dilution typically occurs as the result of blurring or tarnishment of the famous mark. . . . The concept of dilution developed from the idea that because some marks are so well-known and famous, they deserve an extra level of protection beyond the likelihood-of-confusion analysis. Dilution theory seeks to prevent the coexistence of a mark that is sufficiently

similar to a famous mark, regardless of the goods and/or services associated with the allegedly diluting mark."

The Federal Trademark Dilution Act of 1995 and the Federal Dilution Revision Act of 2006 created a federal cause of action for trademark dilution that is separate from infringement. Generally speaking, an owner of a trademark eligible for dilution protection can prevent another company from using that mark no matter how dissimilar the goods and services of the two companies are. That makes dilution protection potentially broader in scope than infringement protection. After the 2006 revision, however, only marks that are "widely recognized by the general consuming public of the United States" are eligible for dilution protection, which means that only a very small percentage of trademarks used in the United States—undoubtedly less than 1 percent—qualify for that protection. Google has protection against dilution. Your local dry cleaner does not.

Check Your Understanding

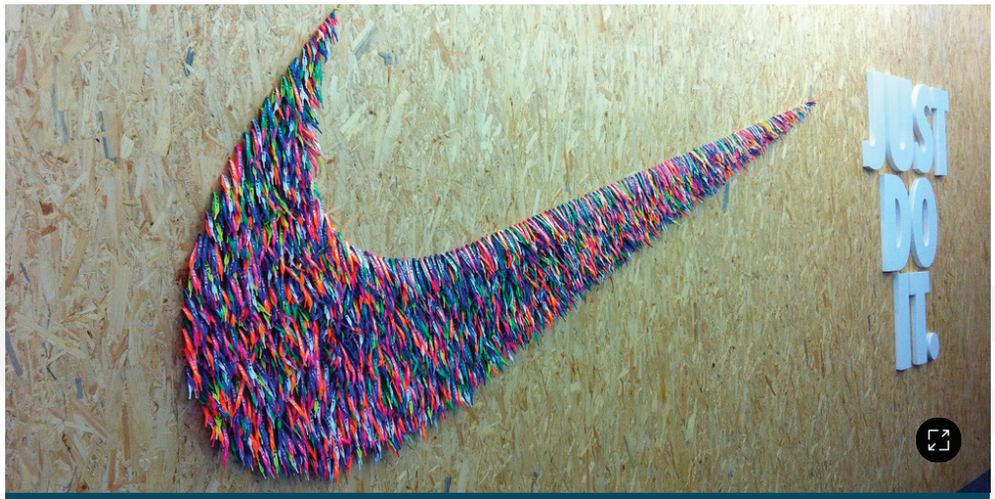
Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 3 | Section 4.9

How does trademark infringement harm consumers?

- ◯ By confusing consumers about the source of goods or services
- ◯ By allowing others to “palm off” lower-quality knockoffs in place of the high-quality goods they are seeking to buy
- ◯ By damaging trust between consumers and providers of goods and services
- ◯ All of the above

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Section 4.10: Trademark Remedies



After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Explain remedies for trademark infringement.
- Discuss effects of infringement.

Remedies for trademark infringement are similar to those available to owners of other intellectual property, including the possibility of receiving monetary damages for lost profits and injunctive relief. But even more so than is the case with patent and copyright owners, trademark owners almost invariably insist on injunctive relief to cure the infringement. That's because when a trademark is infringed, the biggest loss to the owner is not necessarily revenue but the potential damage to the reputation of the brand of his or her business in the minds of consumers.

Imagine, for example, that a manufacturer in Bangladesh started shipping substandard athletic shoes with the Nike "Swoosh" on them into the U.S. market. The loss of revenue resulting from U.S. customers mistakenly buying the Bangladeshi manufacturer's counterfeit shoes might not amount even to a rounding error on Nike's books. But if customers began to lose trust in the "Swoosh" symbol as a reliable indicator of Nike's quality design and manufacturing, the damage to Nike's brand and future profits could be significant. The company would want to secure an immediate injunction against the importation of the offending shoes and thereby stop the ongoing damage to its trademark and brand.

Incidentally, in cases where the products being imported are not patented or copyrighted, the courts may only require the importer to stop use of the mark, but allow for the continued importation of the product.[45]

In addition to injunctive relief, monetary damages may also be awarded in trademark infringement cases. Monetary damages are primarily aimed at compensating trademark owners for lost profits due to the infringing activity, and may be trebled if the infringement is deemed intentional. The courts may base an award on any or all of the following measures:

- The defendant's profits, either as an indicator of the plaintiff's loss or under an unjust enrichment theory
- Actual business damages and losses suffered by the mark owner as a result of the infringement, including lost profits and the cost of notifying customers
- Punitive damages to punish the infringer (available in state courts only)
- Reasonable attorneys' fees incurred by the mark owner to prosecute the case

Check Your Understanding

Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 1 | Section 4.10

Which of the following is true about trademark remedies?

- ◯ Damages can be significantly increased if trademark infringement is deemed willful.
- ◯ Courts frequently use injunctions based on trademark law to stop the importation of products that once carried infringing marks even after those marks have been removed.
- ◯ Federal trademark law also provides for punitive damages for trademark infringement.

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Section 4.11: Fair Use of Trademarks

After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Discuss fair use of trademarks.
- Identify examples of fair use cases.

Not every use of a trademark is infringement.

Individuals and entities may be permitted the fair use of another's trademark under two conditions. These are known as **nominative fair use** and **classic fair use**.

Nominative fair use covers many occasions on which a party other than the trademark owner is using the mark another party to refer to genuine goods or services. An example of nominative fair use is when an auto repair shop advertises that it repairs BMWs and Hondas. It is using the mark "Honda" to refer to cars genuinely produced by the Honda Motor Company, and simply asserting that it is able to conduct repairs on those cars. Another example of nominative fair use is use of a competitor's trademark in comparative advertising. When Verizon advertises that it has better coverage than AT&T, it is making nominative fair use of AT&T's mark because it is actually referring to AT&T's services.

Under nominative fair use, the entity using the trademark is permitted to use only so much of the mark as is necessary to identify the good or service to which

it is referring, and cannot imply any sponsorship or endorsement by the mark holder (unless, of course, the repair shop really is a BMW- or Honda-approved repair facility). Another example is the use of another's trademark for the purpose of a product review.

Auto repair shops like the one above often advertise that they serve a specific type of make or model vehicle. Licensed under CC BY 2.0 via flickr.

Classic fair use occurs when a trademark is used in good faith for its primary meaning, and no consumer confusion is likely to occur. Classic fair uses typically involve marks that are descriptive. For example, even though Kellogg's has gained secondary meaning for the mark "All Bran," another cereal manufacturer might be able to describe its cereal as "all bran," if indeed it consists entirely of the hard outer layers of cereal grains.

Although fair use of trademarks is in many ways similar to the fair use of copyrights, there are differences. Under copyright law, you can use a copyright for the purpose of parody. You can also use trademarks for the purpose of parody, but whoever does so must be very careful to avoid confusion in the marketplace and diluting or tarnishing the trademark in question.

Check Your Understanding

Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 1 | Section 4.11

A party may be permitted the fair use of another's trademark under two conditions, known as nominative fair use and classic fair use. Which of the following is an example of nominative fair use?

- ◯ When a business compares its products with those of a competitor, with no intent to confuse customers as to the source of the competitor's goods
- ◯ When a trademark of another is used to refer to that other's goods or services in legitimate connection with one's own, such as a notice on the packaging of a small company's graphic design program that it can run on the Microsoft Windows operating system
- ◯ Both of the above are correct.

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

CHAPTER

5 TRADE SECRET BASICS

Chapter Summary

Trade secret is an alternative and valuable way to protect intellectual property. But it differs from patent and trademark law in that it requires that the intellectual property *not* be disclosed, whereas patent and trademark law require just the opposite. Anything that derives value by *not* being publicly known—whether it be a formula, pattern, device, method, technique, or process—can be a protectable trade secret.

Key Terms

trade secret, *economic value*, *misappropriation*, *passive disclosure*, *active disclosure*, *statutory damages*, *injunctive relief*, *exemplary damages*

Section 5.1: Trade Secret Protection

After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Define trade secrets.
- Identify the advantages and disadvantages of protecting intellectual property through trade secrets.

What Is a Trade Secret?

Trade secret law is a source of protection for intellectual property that serves as an alternative to patent or trademark law. Whereas patent and trademark law require that the intellectual property to be protected be publicly "disclosed" (for example, through a patent application), trade secret law requires precisely the opposite—that is, that the intellectual property to be protected *not* be publicly disclosed. The subject matter of a trade secret may be virtually any information that is of value as a result of not being generally known.

Vault of the Secret Formula for Coca Cola—maybe the most valuable trade secret in the world.

There is enormous economic value in trade secrets—for companies and countries. A study released in March of 2014 estimated that trade secret misappropriation costs the world's top 40 economies between 1 percent and 3 percent of their gross domestic product each year.[1]

Unlike copyright and patent law, there is no formal requirement of "novelty" or "tangibility" under trade secret law. Rather, trade secret protection is extended to information that has independent economic value by virtue of not being generally known or readily ascertainable by others, and which has been subject to reasonable efforts to avoid public disclosure.

Advantages and Disadvantages of Trade Secret Law

There are both advantages and disadvantages to protecting intellectual property through the use of trade secret law. The decision of whether to use trade secret law as opposed to other legal means of protecting knowledge or information is governed primarily by the nature of the intellectual property to be protected.

Advantages

One of the main advantages of trade secret law is that it provides indefinite future protection. Unlike the 20-year time limit that underlies the protection granted to a patent holder, there is no definite time limit placed on the protection granted to a trade secret owner. This indefinite future protection granted to trade secrets is appealing, assuming that the intellectual property to be protected is likely to remain generally unknown well into the future. For example, if the intellectual property to be protected is a method of manufacturing a product that can be determined from examining the product, then the best way to protect the new method of manufacture might be through a patent. On the other hand, if the new method of manufacturing the product cannot be determined from examination of the product, then the best way to protect the intellectual property might be to treat it as a trade secret.

Disadvantages

Although there is no definite expiration of the protection granted to trade secrets, the protection prohibits only the disclosure or use of the trade secret by one to whom the secret was disclosed in confidence. Unlike patent law, trade secret law does not offer any affirmative protection against the use of the same intellectual property that is independently derived or reverse engineered by a competitor. Consequently, if the intellectual property to be protected is a new method of manufacturing a product, and if that method of manufacture is ascertainable from an examination of the product, then the best form of protection for the intellectual property is most likely that offered by patent law.

The same analysis applies to intellectual property that is likely to be independently derived by a competitor. For as the U.S. Supreme Court noted in *Bonito Boats v. Thunder Craft Boats*,[2] state trade secret law has never given the holder of a trade secret protection against reverse engineering by the public or a competitor. The Supreme Court commented that in order to receive protection from reverse engineering, the holder of the intellectual property must seek the protection of federal patent law.

PROS AND CONS OF TRADE SECRET LAW

Pros	Cons
Trade secret law provides indefinite future protection, so long as the trade secret stays a secret. Trade secret protection has no expiration date.	If someone came up with the same idea on his or her own, the trade secret is no longer protected by law.
Trade secret protection prevents the disclosure or use of the trade secret by one to whom the secret was disclosed in confidence.	Trade secret law does not give the holder of a trade secret protection from reverse engineering by the public or a competitor.

Whereas patent and trademark law involve an affirmative assertion of an intellectual property right, trade secret law only actively operates after a misappropriation or threatened misappropriation of the trade secret has

occurred. Due to this difference in the way trade secret law protects intellectual property, the protections given to trade secrets are largely dependent on classifications of information made by courts. Thus, the foundation and development of trade secret law in the United States is inherently tied to the statutes protecting trade secrets, and the court decisions defining and interpreting the statutory protections created for trade secrets.

Check Your Understanding

Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 8 | Section 5.1

Unlike patents and trademarks, the law requires that intellectual property consisting of trade secrets not be publicly disclosed. True or False?

- ◯ True
- ◯ False

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Section 5.2: The Foundations of Trade Secrets Law

After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Identify the roots of trade secret law in the United States.
- Explain the purpose of the Uniform Trade Secrets Act.

Unlike patents and copyrights that are issued in accordance with federal law, trade secret protection emanates from state law. No federal legislation directly addressing trade secrets has been enacted. Rather, legislation has been enacted on a state-by-state basis.

Trade secret law in the United States is largely rooted in the English legal tradition, and was first incorporated through the court-made common law. The general consensus is that trade secret law originated in England in the early 1800s.[3] Early cases dealt with trade secret concepts not in modern trade secret vernacular but instead through the guise of jurisdictional or restraint of trade terms. The trade secret concept began in American jurisprudence in the case of *Vickery v. Welch*, 36 Mass. 523 (1837). The Massachusetts Supreme Court first expounded on trade secret law in modern terms in *Peabody v. Norfolk*, 98 Mass. 452 (1868). In the 145 years since the *Peabody* decision, the courts, including numerous federal courts, have addressed trade secret issues and have contributed to the current body of trade secret law. However, because each state may regulate trade secret law independently, each state has developed

its own legal regime, involving a mixture of both statutes and common law, to regulate and protect trade secrets.

Uniform Trade Secrets Act

In an effort to harmonize and standardize trade secret law in the United States, the Uniform Law Commission[4] published the Uniform Trade Secrets Act (UTSA) in 1979. The UTSA sought to create a uniform trade secret law regime from state to state. However, the UTSA itself was not binding upon states at publication. In order for the UTSA to be successful, the states themselves needed to adopt and enact the model UTSA statute created by the commission. In 1980, Minnesota became the first state to adopt the UTSA. Since 1980, most states have adopted the UTSA, many with the 1985 amendments to the act. New York and Massachusetts remain the last states that have yet to adopt the UTSA. Although the UTSA harmonized various state law approaches to trade secrets, each state enacts the UTSA with any modifications or customizations the state legislature desires to make. Thus, although most states have adopted the UTSA, each state may have a slightly different adaptation of the UTSA.

Texas became the most recent state to adopt the Uniform Trade Secrets Act, effective September 1, 2013.

One important provision of the UTSA is section 7, which deals with the interaction of the UTSA and state law. Section 7 preempts certain state law causes of action.

Section 7 "displaces conflicting tort, restitutionary, and other law…providing civil remedies for misappropriation of a trade secret."

Trade Secret Misappropriation

Although this section seems to indicate that the UTSA broadly replaces all state laws dealing with **misappropriation** of trade secrets, there is debate as to what constitutes "conflicting tort, restitutionary, and other law." Additionally, what it means for a common law remedy to be "based on" misappropriation of a trade secret is often contested. Owners seeking to recover damages for misappropriation generally argue that only common law causes of action that have elements identical to the UTSA are preempted, while defendants argue that any cause of action used to protect trade secrets is preempted because it is duplicative of the UTSA. Despite this potential conflict between the UTSA and state common law, this chapter focuses on the main body of trade secret law as governed by the UTSA.

The Uniform Trade Secrets Act explained.
Source: LawInfo.

Check Your Understanding

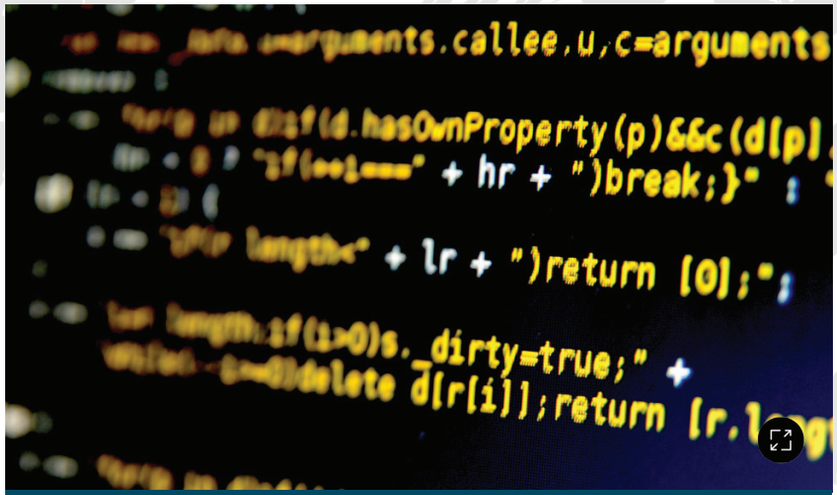
Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 4 | Section 5.2

Trade secret protection is guaranteed by the federal government. True or False?

- ◯ True
- ◯ False

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Section 5.3: Elements of a Trade Secret



After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Identify the key criteria used to qualify as a trade secret.
- Explain how ideas can be protected as trade secrets.

To qualify as a trade secret, the information in question must meet two essential criteria. First, the information must attain its value from the fact that it is not generally known. Second, the owner of that information must take reasonable efforts to maintain its secrecy. Absent these two elements, information does not qualify as a trade secret and is not entitled to trade secret protections that prevent or remedy misappropriation under the UTSA.[5]

What qualifies as a trade secret? Source: LawInfo.

Trade secrets are not limited to particular subject matters, although the knowledge or information to be protected need not take any particular form. A trade secret can be information or knowledge

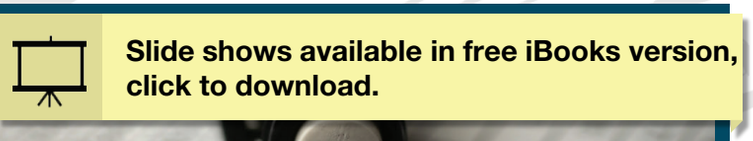
in the form of a formula, pattern, compilation, program, device, method, technique, or process. Although the UTSA defines what may be a trade secret, various courts interpreting the UTSA have come to different conclusions on what type of material should be considered a trade secret. For example, whereas courts have found that an insurer's database is a trade secret under Wisconsin law, a similar database was found not to be a trade secret in Rhode Island.[6]

The Value of Secrets

For information or knowledge in any of the above forms to be considered a trade secret, it must derive independent economic value because it is not generally known to, nor readily ascertainable by, other persons who can profit from its disclosure or use. Some examples of information courts have found to be trade secrets include computer software, sales information, customer information, and manufacturing formulas. However, merely because information is not known to the public does not necessarily make the information a trade secret. For example, information that is not generally known by the public but is known by different manufacturers in the same industry likely does not qualify as a trade secret.[7]

Material that is ascertainable through public sources generally does not derive independent economic value justifying trade secret protection. If the information in question cannot be quickly or easily ascertained from examining or testing the publicly available product, then it is more likely to be a trade secret.[8] Conversely, if the information may be discovered through public observation of the product or the company's displays, it is unlikely to be a trade secret.[9] For example, customer lists are not considered trade secrets when the identity of the customers could potentially be discovered through public sources. However, identical information if not available through public sources could constitute a trade secret.[10] Additionally, processes or systems that are simply a compilation of known information generally do not rise to the level of trade secrets. The courts, however, are still quite divided on this issue.

Slide Show



Slide shows available in free iBooks version, click to download.

When a company's customer list can be discovered through public sources, it is unlikely to be considered a trade secret.Image used under CC BY 2.0.

What Is a Trade Secret?

Non-Examples of Trade Secrets Information that is not generally known by the public but is known by different manufacturers in the same industry likely does not qualify as a trade secret. Other non–trade secrets include information gathered through public sources, information discovered through public observation or a company's display, and customer lists.

Protecting Ideas as Trade Secrets

In addition to information, certain ideas may constitute trade secrets. Although ideas were not protected as trade secrets under common law, the UTSA provides protection for certain novel and concrete ideas. For example, remedies for misappropriation of an idea may be permitted based on the existence of a confidential relationship. The elements that must be proven under this common theory are: (1) a novel or original idea; (2) reduced to concrete form; (3) disclosed to the defendant in a confidential relationship, i.e., one in which it would be implied that use would not be made without compensation; and, (4) used by the defendant.

Protection of an idea may also be permitted on the basis of a contractual relationship with the defendant. Parties may enter into a contract to protect an idea being submitted or disclosed to another person or company. The major benefit of a contract to the submitter of an idea is evidence of a protected disclosure that is deserving of trade secret protections. The major benefit of a contract to the recipient of an idea is the establishment of the ground rules under which compensation, if any, will be payable to the submitter.

Corporations that receive unsolicited ideas many times grapple with how to best protect use of those unsolicited ideas. To protect themselves from the uncertainties of trade secrets law, the idea must be converted from an unsolicited idea to a solicited idea. This may be accomplished by contacting the submitter and alerting him that the idea will be considered only with the understanding that the use of the idea, and decisions regarding compensation for that idea, rest solely with the corporation.

Whether the trade secret takes the form of information or an idea, the owner of that trade secret must show not only that the trade secret was not generally known or readily ascertainable, but also that the lack of general knowledge of the trade secret conferred some value to the owner. When the owner derives a profit from licensing the use of the protected information, the value to the owner is quite apparent. However, in cases where the owner is seeking to show he was injured in the marketplace or through the loss of profits after costly research and development, the value may only become apparent by inference. But even if information is not generally known and gives the owner some value, the information is not a trade secret unless the owner takes steps to protect the secrecy of the information.

Check Your Understanding

Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 4 | Section 5.3

Which of the following could be considered a trade secret so long as reasonable steps had been taken to prevent its disclosure?

- ◯ Sales information
- ◯ Customer lists
- ◯ Manufacturing techniques
- ◯ All of the above

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Section 5.4: The Secrecy Requirement

After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Explain the steps that businesses can take in order to protect trade secrets.
- Describe how trade secrets can be accessed through passive and active disclosure.

The second element necessary to gain trade secret protection is evidence that the trade secret's owner made a reasonable effort to maintain secrecy. This flexible standard set out by the UTSA is often a point of contention, which results in litigation. To determine whether a piece of information rises to the level of a trade secret, courts often engage in a highly factual inquiry into the security measures taken by the owner to protect a trade secret. For as the Supreme Court has noted, if an owner has not taken steps to protect the trade secret, their proprietary interests may be diminished.[11]

Under Company Lock and Key

Because the UTSA may be varied by any state, the level of secrecy required varies from state to state. For example, a version of the UTSA adopted by some states contains a provision that reduces the burden of secrecy placed on the owner of a trade secret. Specifically,

this version of the UTSA provides that the existence of a trade secret is not negated merely because an employee or other person has acquired the trade secret without express or specific notice that it is a trade secret if, under all the circumstances, the employee or other person knows or has reason to know that the owner intends or expects the secrecy of the type of information comprising the trade secret to be maintained. Although this provision tips the scales in favor of trade secret protection, it should not be viewed as removing the affirmative obligation the UTSA places on one seeking protection of trade secrets. In both states that have and have not modified the UTSA in this manner, the measures taken to secure the information are key to finding whether the information will be protected as a trade secret.

Businesses must make reasonable efforts to protect their trade secrets. Image used under CC BY 2.0.

Because trade secret protection is only given to information that is subject to reasonable efforts to maintain secrecy, every person or company that desires to protect its trade secrets under the UTSA should adopt and implement a trade secret protection plan. The specific elements of such a plan will vary depending on the nature of the intellectual property to be protected, as well as the circumstances surrounding its development and use. However, in

taking reasonable efforts to protect the secrecy of the information, many different factors are considered. Because no rigid formula exists to determine if reasonable efforts to maintain secrecy are in place, courts look to many of the best practices, discussed below, to determine whether an owner of information made reasonable efforts to protect its secrecy.

Protection Plans

Memorializing a trade secret protection plan in writing helps to ensure that the business or person is indeed taking reasonable measures to protect the trade secret. The person or company seeking to protect its intellectual property through the use of trade secret law should maintain a written statement of its trade secret security policy. This statement can be written in the form of a policy manual and helps prevent situations in which "unwritten rules" are followed or rules are enforced in a lax manner and then eventually ignored. Moreover, should litigation become necessary, it is easier to persuade a court that the security procedures were indeed a primary concern if they are enumerated in writing. However, if security measures are merely written, but not followed, it may be difficult to prove reasonable efforts to maintain secrecy.[12]

A trade secret protection plan should include a program for ensuring that employees are made aware of the trade secret status of information and that the employees are periodically reminded of their confidentiality obligations. Discussions between the employer and the employee may be appropriate. Writing an annual conflict of interest letter to remind management-level employees of their responsibilities in keeping information confidential may also suffice. An essential part of this program is making certain that employees are aware of and familiar with the written trade secret protection plan discussed above.

Employees should also be required to sign confidentiality agreements acknowledging that

they have access to trade secret information, that they will not disclose or misappropriate that information, and that they will report all disclosures. Finally, "exit interviews" should be conducted for employees leaving the company. This interview provides an opportunity to remind employees of their written obligation not to disclose or misuse any trade secret information, and to extend an open door to discuss any issues or concerns that may arise in connection with their future employment.[13]

In addition to educating employees, reasonable efforts to protect information often include physically restricting access to trade secrets. Trade secret information should be treated differently from nonproprietary information and should, if possible, be physically segregated so that it is not readily accessible. For example, it is not uncommon to restrict visitor access to sales and administrative headquarters. In addition, access to the intellectual property should be restricted to those with a need to know or access the information. Depending on the nature of the intellectual property to be protected, reasonably restricting access to trade secrets may be as simple as segregating the information in separate file drawers, or may require measures as extreme as designating an entirely separate facility to house the intellectual property.[14]

If possible under the circumstances, physical security measures should be instituted, including the use of locks on doors, gates, and cabinets containing trade secrets. These physical security steps should be obvious to both employees and third parties who may have occasion to visit the area in which trade secrets are stored.[15] These types of security measures communicate that an effort is being made to protect the information.

Strategies for Protecting Trade Secrets

Access to a computer system containing trade secrets should be restricted to essential personnel. Image used under CC BY 2.0.

Given the ease with which documents can be reproduced, trade secrets that are reduced to writing should be treated with special care. Documents containing trade secrets should be clearly labeled with shorthand instructions that are consistent with the written trade secret protection plan. For example, documents may be marked "secret" or "confidential."[16] Access to these documents should be monitored and all persons allowed access to the documents should be informed of the meaning of the trade secret designation on the document and the relevant provisions of the written trade secret protection plan. This attention to detail should also be followed in arranging for proper destruction of the documents.[17]

Like trade secrets that are reduced to writing, trade secrets stored on a computer system are particularly susceptible to theft. Access to a computer system containing trade secrets should be restricted in accordance with the written trade secret protection plan and all physical computer-related items such as discs and printouts should contain the same trade secret legend used to identify documents containing intellectual property.

When allowing third parties, be they members of the public or business associates, access to a facility in which trade secrets are stored or used,

care must be taken to ensure that trade secrets are not inadvertently disclosed. Disclosure can occur either passively or actively. **Passive disclosure** might occur by carelessly leaving documents containing trade secrets in open view when business associates from another company visit your facility. **Active disclosure** might occur during a guided tour of the facility when a tour guide reveals the nature of a project or process the company is working on or has recently perfected.[18]

The type of active trade secret disclosure that can occur outside of the facility where trade secrets are housed is through the dissemination of confidential information at trade shows, in magazine articles, in publications, in press releases, or during public speeches. Such disclosures often occur unwittingly because they are made by marketing executives or mid-level managers who are not themselves instrumental in the development of the trade secret and who are often charged with a goal somewhat at odds with maintaining the secrecy of intellectual property—that is, their duty often is to publicly disclose the company's achievements. Similar difficulties might arise when engineers or those responsible for the creation of trade secrets exchange ideas with their colleagues from other companies at professional seminars.[19] One method of curtailing such disclosures is to insist that all publications, articles, and speeches be reviewed and approved by a "filter" committee prior to dissemination.[20]

Although the very nature of many businesses requires that a company disclose its trade secrets to prospective buyers, licensees, joint venturers, or other outsiders, this does not mean that a company must surrender all rights to its trade secrets. Rather, when the company enters into a transaction with a third party, it should cautiously monitor the flow of information to the third party and document the nature of the trade secrets exposed and the specific limited use to which they may be put.[21] You might consider putting outsiders on notice regarding the need to keep information confidential, and even require

the signing of confidentiality agreements. The standard of what constitutes reasonable efforts to maintain secrecy varies substantially depending upon the circumstances and the information that is being protected. However, the different methods of maintaining secrecy discussed above all often help to show that the information in question qualifies as a trade secret, and deserves trade secret protection.

Check Your Understanding

Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 5 | Section 5.4

To gain trade secret protection, what must the owner do with confidential information?

- ◯ Publicize it as widely as possible.
- ◯ Not disclose it.
- ◯ Take active steps to keep the information secret.

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Section 5.5: Misappropriation of Trade Secrets

After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Describe the differences between the misappropriation of a trade secret through improper means and disclosure without consent.
- Explain how trade secret owners use direct evidence and circumstantial evidence to prove that a misappropriation of trade secrets has occurred.

The enforcement provisions of the UTSA allow companies and individuals to protect information that qualifies as a trade secret. The protections allowed for by the UTSA are triggered by the actual or threatened "misappropriation" of trade secrets. "Misappropriation" is defined in two ways: (1) acquisition of a trade secret through improper means, or (2) disclosure or use of a trade secret without consent.

Misappropriation through Improper Means

The first type of misappropriation under the UTSA is acquisition of a trade secret through improper means. Specifically, the UTSA prohibits the "acquisition of a trade secret of another, by a person who knows or has reason to know the trade secret was acquired by improper means."[22] "Improper means" includes theft, bribery, misrepresentation, breach or inducement of a breach of a duty to maintain secrecy, or espionage

through electronic or other means.[23] In short, the first type of misappropriation is the mere possession of a trade secret that has been acquired through theft or the breach of a duty to maintain the secrecy of the trade secret.

Misappropriation through Disclosure

The second type of misappropriation under the UTSA is the disclosure or use of someone else's trade secret without their express or implied consent. Although the statutory definition is somewhat complicated, the UTSA essentially prohibits the disclosure or use of a trade secret that is possessed as a result of theft, breach of a duty to maintain its secrecy, or an accident or mistake on the part of the trade secret owner.[24]

Slide Show

Slide shows available in free iBooks version, click to download.

A court ordered Best Buy to pay $27 million after being accused of stealing trade secrets from a small California start-up. Image used under CC BY 2.0.

Acquisition of a Trade Secret through Improper Means The first type of misappropriation is the mere possession of a trade secret that has been acquired through theft or the breach of a duty to maintain the secrecy of the trade secret.

In short, the UTSA prohibits the disclosure or use of a trade secret that is possessed as a result of "improper means" as defined in the preceding paragraph. The rule of thumb is that if you possess, disclose, or use a trade secret that you know or have reason to know is not intended to be revealed to you, beware.

UTSA's Definition of Misappropriation

The UTSA's definition of misappropriation is rather broad. The protection granted to trade secret owners under the UTSA is further expanded by prohibiting not only the actual, but also the threatened, misappropriation of trade secrets. The distinction between these two types of misappropriation is basically one of timing. The UTSA prohibits the actual disclosure of trade secrets and provides remedies for those whose trade secrets have already been misappropriated. A more difficult question arises, however, with respect to a trade secret owner's rights prior to the actual misappropriation of trade secrets. To address a trade secret owner's legitimate concerns that misappropriation may occur in the future, the UTSA prohibits "threatened" misappropriation.

A trade secret owner may assert legal rights subsequent to any actual unauthorized disclosure or use of trade secrets. In such situations, the wrong has already occurred and the trade secret owner may seek judicial intervention concerning any legal rights that were violated. This is true regardless of whether the misappropriator obtained the secret without the owner's consent, or originally with consent but later used the secret for the misappropriator's own gain.

The burden of proof in an actual misappropriation case is still squarely on the shoulders of the trade secret owner who is alleging that his or her trade secrets have been misappropriated. This burden of proof requires the trade secret owner to demonstrate that he or she was in possession of knowledge or information that was not generally known and was valuable precisely because it was not generally known, and that the knowledge or information was subject to efforts that were reasonable under the circumstances to maintain its secrecy. Depending on the facts and circumstances of a given case, together with the nature of the intellectual property to be protected, proving the elements necessary to make out a trade secret case can be a challenging undertaking. The best way to establish a foundation for successful prosecution

of trade secret misappropriation is to follow closely the provisions of a written trade secret protection plan, and take measures to ensure the security of the information as discussed above.

Perhaps the most interesting trade secret cases involve the alleged threatened misappropriation of trade secrets. In these cases, the trade secret owner does not contend that their trade secrets have already been compromised, but rather that unless some action is taken to halt the current progress of events, their trade secrets will be misappropriated at some time in the future. Threatened misappropriation cases often arise when a highly skilled or trained employee who has been exposed to a company's trade secrets leaves the company's employ and goes to work for a competitor. On the one hand, the former employer may well have legitimate concerns about possible disclosure of its trade secrets to a competitor; on the other hand, the employee has a right to work for the employer of his choice. Consequently, courts are required to balance these competing interests. The result often depends on the legitimacy of the trade secret owner's concerns of misappropriation and the nature of the evidence that is available to substantiate those concerns.

Nike lawsuit claims former designers stole trade secrets.

When faced with a situation where an employee who has been exposed to trade secrets leaves to work for a new employer, courts typically consider three factors: (1) whether the former employer and the new employer are competitors, (2) whether the employee's new position is comparable to

his or her former position, and (3) the efficacy of steps taken by the new employer to prevent the misappropriation of trade secrets.[25]

Mere suspicion that another party may have wrongfully disclosed or used one's trade secrets, in and of itself, does not enable the trade secret owner to assert these rights successfully. Courts will not prohibit the wrongful use or disclosure of trade secrets based upon the mere uneasiness or suspicions of the trade secret owner that some misappropriation may occur. Rather, the trade secret owner is required to demonstrate that the concerns of misappropriation are legitimate. In most situations, this means that the trade secret owner will be required to present evidence, either direct or circumstantial, that misappropriation is likely to occur.

A trade secret owner may present direct or circumstantial evidence to demonstrate that there is an imminent threatened misappropriation of trade secrets. Direct evidence exists when the trade secret owner can demonstrate that action has already been taken, or words have already been spoken, that indicate that misappropriation of trade secrets is going to occur. Common examples of direct evidence supporting a trade secret owner's legitimate concerns of threatened misappropriation are statements made by the former employee or the new employer. Former employees might make statements about the relative lack of weight they give to their former employer's confidentiality policies. Similarly, the new employer might make statements about the purpose of hiring the new employee, why other potential employees were rejected, or the nature of the duties the new employee will be required to perform. Based on evidence of such actions or statements, a court is likely to protect trade secrets by enjoining prospectively their wrongful use or disclosure.

In the Courtroom

However, in most situations, direct evidence concerning the likelihood of misappropriation does not exist. In such cases, a trade secret owner can present circumstantial evidence to demonstrate that the unauthorized use

or disclosure of trade secrets is imminently threatened. Circumstantial evidence demonstrating that imminent misappropriation is likely to occur consists of two types: (1) evidence demonstrating the intent of a party to elicit the wrongful disclosure of the trade secret, and (2) evidence demonstrating that the wrongful disclosure or use of a trade secret is inevitable regardless of any party's intentions.

Evidence demonstrating the intent of the new employer to elicit trade secrets from its new employee takes many forms. Often, a trade secret owner can show that the new employer desires the trade secret and has unsuccessfully attempted to acquire the trade secret information by proper means, either from the trade secret owner, other parties, or independent derivation or reverse engineering.[26] The new employer's intent to misappropriate trade secrets can also be demonstrated by showing that the new employer solicited the trade secret owner's employees and has not made any efforts to solicit employees from the industry in general. Other facts, such as access to a common supplier, access to a former consultant, or failed prior attempts to duplicate technology can also contribute to a circumstantial showing of intent.

Second, in addition to circumstantial evidence demonstrating an intention to elicit improper disclosure of trade secrets, a trade secret owner can show that such disclosure is inevitable by virtue of the particular circumstances of the situation. This showing is most frequently demonstrated by evidence that the work to be performed by the former employee is very similar to the work previously performed for the trade secret owner, and that the former employee will be unable to perform his new job conscientiously without revealing trade secrets previously learned.

Although circumstantial evidence is generally not considered as strong as direct evidence, it is clear that courts will issue injunctions prohibiting the misappropriation of trade secrets based solely on circumstantial evidence that indicates such activity is imminently likely to occur. For example, in *PepsiCo, Inc. v. Redmond*,

54 F.3d 1262, the defendant moved from a senior position at PepsiCo to a position at rival Quaker Oats Company (then owner of the Gatorade brand, which is now owned by Pepsi). The court held that it was proper for the district court to conclude that based on the defendant's access to Pepsi's trade secrets, it was inevitable as part of the defendant's new employment that the trade secrets would be relied on. The district court concluded that unless the defendant possessed "an uncanny ability to compartmentalize information," he would necessarily make decisions for the new employer by relying on the trade secrets. This was true even though there was no direct evidence that Redmond disclosed any of Pepsi's trade secrets.

A trade secret owner can claim that the exposure of a trade secret is inevitable if the former employee will be unable to perform his new job conscientiously without revealing trade secrets previously learned. Image used under CC BY 2.0.

Act Fast

A trade secret owner who suspects that either actual or threatened misappropriation has occurred or is likely to occur must act promptly to enforce his or her legal rights. Although the statute of limitations under the UTSA is three years, courts have the power to deny the relief requested by trade secret owners even when an action has been initiated

within the statute of limitations period, if the action has not been initiated reasonably promptly. The UTSA assumes that a trade secret owner who suspects misappropriation will move with reasonable alacrity to protect his or her intellectual property, and recognizes that if such action is not taken, then third parties may materially change their positions in a good-faith belief that no trade secret rights have been violated. Under such circumstances, a court may find that the trade secret owner has been estopped from exercising, or waived their right to seek protection under the UTSA. These principles essentially allow the court to find that even though the information that a party seeks to protect meets the requirements of a trade secret, equity demands that the information not be protected as a trade secret because protecting it would harm a third party.[27]

Check Your Understanding

Multiple Choice | Question 1 of 4 | Section 5.5

Which of the following is NOT an example of misappropriation of a trade secret?

- ◯ Acquisition of a trade secret through improper means
- ◯ Deliberate disclosure of a trade secret by the trade secret owner
- ◯ Disclosure of a trade secret without consent

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

Section 5.6: Remedies Available for the Misappropriation of Trade Secrets

After completing this section, you will be able to:

- Describe how injunctions are used to enjoin actual and threatened misappropriations of trade secrets.
- Explain how remedies are awarded under the Uniform Trade Secrets Act.

The UTSA provides a full array of remedies, including **statutory damages**, **injunctive relief**, attorneys' fees, and **exemplary damages**.[28] The remedy or remedies will depend on the extent of trade secrets involved, the manner of misappropriation or conversion, and the type of damage sustained by the owner.

Injunctive Relief

As discussed above, under the UTSA, injunctive relief is available to enjoin actual, as well as threatened, misappropriation. Injunctive relief allows the owner of a trade secret to obtain a court order prohibiting the actual or threatened misappropriation of a trade secret. The ability to enjoin threatened misappropriation is very important because it enables the owner of the trade secret to prevent public disclosure of the trade secret.[29] Injunctive relief may take

many forms. The scope of an injunction may vary from a broad prohibition on any use of material found to be a trade secret, to a more limited prohibition on the scope of an employee's work with a new employer.[30] Both the scope and subject matter of an injunction vary depending upon the specific facts of the case and the nature of the trade secret in question. The UTSA provides that an injunction shall terminate once the trade secret ceases to exist, but may be continued for a reasonable period of time to extinguish any commercial advantage that otherwise would be derived from the misappropriation. This is especially important where, at the time of the action, the information or knowledge is no longer a trade secret. In such a case, the court may still award the owner injunctive relief that is narrowly crafted to deprive the defendant of the benefit of time saved by improper use of the owner's trade secret.[31]

INJUNCTIVE RELIEF	
Definition	Injunctive relief allows the owner of a trade secret to legally prohibit a former employee, for example, from misappropriating, publicly disclosing, or otherwise profiting from his or knowledge of the trade secret.
Scope	The scope of an injunction varies based on the on the nature of the potential misappropriator's knowledge of the trade secret, and on the potential competitive advantage that knowledge might grant.
Duration and Termination	The duration of an injunction is determined based on the amount of time it would take a competitor to reveal the trade secret by proper means. An injunction can be terminated when the trade secret ceases to exist.
Permanent Injunctions	To determine the appropriate length of time, courts may rely on the opinions/experience of experts and competitors. They may impose permanent injunctions or rely on other considerations seen as important by the court.

Where the information has not been publicly disclosed, the issue becomes more difficult. The duration of the injunction is often calculated according to the time that would be required for independent development of the information or knowledge that was misappropriated. These "head start" injunctions assume that the information could be properly obtained through reverse engineering or independent development.[32]

To determine what length of time is appropriate, courts may rely on the opinions of experts and the experience of other competitors.[33] However, a court may also opt to impose a permanent injunction that can later be modified, or in some circumstance rely on other considerations deemed important by the court.[34]

Courts also exhibit broad flexibility in the nature and duration of relief in cases dealing with former employees. When an injunction is issued in these cases, it usually will not be an outright ban on employment. Rather, it will be a more limited injunction for a more limited duration.[35] Most courts are willing to allow continued employment, but will restrict the employee from working with a particular product line or area of the new employer's business.[36] However, if the role the employee will assume in his or her new employment would inevitably lead to the disclosure of trade secrets, the employment may be prohibited altogether.[37]

Damages Awarded

Damages are often awarded in addition to an injunction and are not an exclusive remedy.[38] For example, in *Seagate Tech., LLC v. Western Digital Corp.*, 834 N.W.2d 555 (Minn. App. 2013), the Minnesota Court of Appeals affirmed a judgment of $630 million in favor of the plaintiffs against the defendants stemming from a trade secret misappropriation dispute. Under the UTSA, damages are measured by the actual loss caused by the misappropriation as well as any resulting unjust enrichment of the misappropriator. Where the amount of actual loss or unjust enrichment cannot be accurately calculated, the UTSA provides that damages may also be measured by the imposition of a reasonable royalty for the misappropriator's unauthorized disclosure or use of the trade secret. Exemplary or punitive damages may be awarded where the court finds that the misappropriation was willful and malicious.[39] For example, in *Mattel, Inc. v. MGA Entm't, Inc.*, 801 F. Supp. 2d 950 (C.D. Cal 2011), Mattel was found to have engaged in a prolonged practice of encouraging employees to

use false pretenses to acquire competitive information from the defendant. As a result of this conduct, the jury awarded, and the court affirmed a verdict of $85 million dollars in exemplary damages. A punitive or exemplary award may not exceed twice the amount of the damage award.[40] However, some states have modified this cap on punitive damages, and allow for punitive damages greater than two times the amount of actual damages.[41]

CASE STUDIES

Case	Description of Damages
Seagate Tech., LLC v. Western Digital Corp.	In this case, the Minnesota Court of Appeals affirmed a judgment of $630 million in favor of the plaintiffs stemming from a trade secret misappropriation. Under the UTSA, damages are measured by the actual loss caused by the misappropriation and any resulting unjust enrichment of the misappropriator.
Mattel, Inc. v. MGA Entm't, Inc.	In this case, Mattel was found to have encouraged employees to use false pretenses to acquire competitive information from the defendant. As a result of this conduct, $85 million dollars in exemplary damages was awarded. A punitive or exemplary award may not exceed twice the amount of the damage award.[42] However, some states have modified this cap.[43]

In exceptional circumstances, an injunction may entitle the owner of the trade secret to a royalty for the period of time during which the use of the trade secret was prohibited. For example, the Supreme Court of Georgia has affirmed a trial court's reliance on a seldom-used provision of the UTSA to impose a "royalty injunction" instead of an injunction prohibiting the use of the plaintiff's trade secret.[44]

A court may also award attorneys' fees to a prevailing party in exceptional circumstances. A bad faith claim of misappropriation, a bad faith resistance to a motion to terminate an injunction, or a finding of willful and malicious appropriation are exceptional circumstances in which an award of attorneys' fees may be appropriate. However, courts are generally disinclined to award attorneys' fees.[45] The attorney fee provision is included to dissuade parties from filing malicious misappropriation actions in bad faith, and considered along with the need for exemplary damages.[46]

Check Your Understanding

Drag & Drop | Question 1 of 2 | Section 5.6

What remedies does the UTSA provide for the misappropriation of trade secrets? (Choose all that apply.)

- Criminal penalties of up to five years for a first offense
- Statutory damages
- Injunctive relief
- Exemplary damages
- Attorneys' fees

Interactive assessments available in free iBooks version, click to download.

References

Chapter 1

[1] United States Patent and Trademark Office. (2012, January 26). *Patents*. Retrieved from www.uspto.gov/patents/index.jsp

[2] U.S. Constitution Arr. 1, § 8

[3] B. Zorina Khan, *The Democratization of Invention: Patents and Copyrights in American Economic Development, 1790-1920,* Cambridge University Press, 2005.

[4] Naomi R. Lamoreaux and Kenneth L. Sokoloff, *"Inventors, Firms, and the Market for Technology: U.S. Manufacturing in the Late Nineteenth and Early Twentieth Centuries,"* Historical Paper 98, National Bureau of Economic Research, Cambridge, Mass., 1997.

[5] Francois Leveque and Yann Meniere, "Patents and Innovation: Friends or Foes?" CERNA (Centre d'economie industrielle Ecole Nationale Superieure des Mines de Paris), December, 2006.

[6] See "Record of Elias E. Reis," 8, Thomson v. Reis, case 13,971, box 1,845, Interference Case Files, 1836-1905, Records of the Patent Office, Record Group 241, National Archives, courtesy of B. Zorina Khan.

[7] Ron D. Katznelson, "Inventing Around Edison's Incandescent Lamp Patent: Evidence of Patents' Role in Stimulating Downstream Development," May, 2012, derived from: http://works.bepress.com/cgi/viewcontent.cgi?article=1073&context=rkatznelson

[8] Charles Anthon, *"A Classical Dictionary,"* Harper & Bros, 1841.

[9] Op. cit., Khan.

[10] Google Books, found at bit.ly/QmPhaZ

[11] Kevin A. Hassett and Robert J. Shapiro, *"What Ideas Are Worth: The Value of Intellectual Capital and Intangible Assets in the American Economy,"* Sonecon, 2012.

[12] "Intangible Asset Market Value," Ocean Tomo, derived from http://bit.ly/bAPJVH

[13] Stanley Engerman and Kenneth Sokoloff, *"Factor Endowments, Institutions, and Differential Paths of Growth Among New World Economies,"* in Stephen Haber (ed), How Latin America Fell Behind, Stanford University Press, Palo Alto, California, 1997.

[14] Courtesy of Google Books, derived from: http://bit.ly/Meh0Pv

[15] Op. cit., Khan.

[16] Kenneth Sokoloff and B. Zorina Khan, *"The Democratization of Invention During Early Industrialization, 1790-1846,"* Working Paper No. 578, Department of Economics, University of California, Los Angeles, December, 1989.

[17] Patent Act of 1790, HR-41,

[18] Op. cit., Khan.

[19] B. Zorina Khan, *"Antitrust and Innovation Before the Sherman Act,"* Antitrust Law Journal, No. 3, 2011.

[20] Naomi R. Lamoreaux and Kenneth L. Sokoloff, *"Inventive Activity and the Market for Technology in the United States: 1840-1920,"* Working Paper 7107, National Bureau of Economic Research, Cambridge, Mass. 1999.

[21] B. Zorina Khan, *"Institutions and Technological Innovation During Early Economic Growth: Evidence From the Great Inventors of the United States, 1790-1930,"* Working Paper 10966, National Bureau of Economic Research, Cambridge, Mass., 2004.

[22] B. Zorina Khan, *The Democratization of Invention: Patents and Copyrights in American Economic Development, 1790-1920,* Cambridge University Press, 2005.

[23] *"Intellectual Property: Assessing Factors that Affect Patent Infringement Litigation Could Improve Patent Quality,"* U.S. GAO, August 2013.

[24] Naomi Lamoreayx and Kenneth Sokoloff, *"Intermediaries in the U.S. Market for Technology,1870-1920,"* Working Paper No. 9017, National Bureau of Economic Research, Cambridge, MA. June, 2002.

[25] B. Zorina Khan and Kenneth L. Sokoloff, *"Intellectual Property Institutions in the United States: Early Development and Comparative Perspective,"* World Bank Research Workshop, July 17-19, 2000

[26] Joseph Hornett and David Johnson, Purdue Research Foundation. Derived from: bit.ly/O7iA18

[27] B. Zorina Khan, *The Democratization of Invention: Patents and Copyrights in American Economic Development, 1790-1920,* Cambridge University Press, 2005.

[28] Op. cit., Khan.

[29] Http://www.pwc.com/en_US/us/forensic-services/publications/assets/2012-patent-litigation-study.pdf

[30] Sean Connolly, "Patent Litigation Rates: What They Tell Us and What They Don't," derived from: http://connollyip.com/patent-litigation-rates-what-they-tell-us-and-what-they-dont/

[31] Gene Quinn, "Patent Litigation Statistics: 1980-2010, *IP Watchdog,* derived from: http://www.ipwatchdog.com/2011/08/02/patent-litigation-statistics-1980-2010/id=17995/

[32] http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Smartphone_wars.

[33] "The Telephone Cases," Wikipedia, http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_Telephone_Cases.

[34] B. Zorina Khan, *"Property Rights and Patent Litigation in Early Nineteenth-Century America,"* Journal of Economic History, 1995, vol. 55, issue 01, pages 58-97.

[35] Adam Mossoff, "The Rise and Fall of the First American Patent Thicket: The Sewing Machine War of the 1850s," *Arizona Law Review*, Vol. 53, pp. 165-211, 2011.

[36] B. Zorina Khan, *The Democratization of Invention: Patents and Copyrights in American Economic Development, 1790-1920,* Cambridge University Press, 2005.

[37] *Scientific American,* October 21, 1876, courtesy of B. Zorina Khan.

[38] Henry Sumner Maine, *Popular Government,* courtesy of B. Zorina Khan.

[39] Naomi R. Lamoreaux and Kenneth L. Sokoloff, *"Financing Innovation in the United States: 1870 to Present,"* MIT Press, Cambridge, Mass. 2007.

[40] *"Silicon Valley wins in securing U.S. patent office,"* San Francisco Chronicle, July 3, 2012.

[41] *"Patenting by Entrepreneurs: The Berkeley Patent Survey Part III of III,"* PatentlyO, July 21, 2010.

[42] Reported in *American Jurist and Law Magazine*, vol. 1 (1829), courtesy of B. Zorina Khan.

[43] 35 U.S.C § 101.

[44] Arthur R. Miller and Michael H. Davis, *Intellectual Property: Patents, Trademarks, and Copyright in a Nutshell*. (5th ed., p. 25). St. Paul MN: West Publishing Co., 2007.

[45] Ashish Arora, Marco Ceccagnoli, and Wesley M. Cohen, *"R&D and the Patent Premium,"* Science Direct, International Journal of Industrial Organization Issue 26, 2008.

[46] From Jefferson's letter to George Fleming in 1815, excerpt from *The Jefferson Cyclopedia*, courtesy of B. Zorina Khan.

[47] Robert Merges, *"Patents, Entry and Growth in the Software Industry,"* University of California at Berkeley School of Law, Berkeley, California, 2006. Retrieved from: http://papers.ssrn.com/sol3/papers.cfm?abstract_id=926204.

[48] Op. cit., Ocean Tomo.

[49] 35 U.S.C.§101, §102, and §103

[50] Op. cit., Miller & Davis.

[51] United States Patent and Trademark Office. (2010, July 21). *Manual of Patent Examining Procedure* § 1.121. Retrieved from http://www.uspto.gov/web/offices/pac/mpep/documents/appxr_1_121.htm

[52] United States Patent and Trademark Office. (2010, July 21). *Manual of Patent Examining Procedure* §.0 Retrieved from http://www.uspto.gov/web/offices/pac/mpep/documents/0700_706_07.htm#sect706.07

[53] 37 CFR Part 41. Department of Commerce, United States Patent and Trademark Office. (2008). *Rules of practice before the board of patent appeals and interferences in ex parte appeals*. Retrieved from website: http://www.gpo.gov/fdsys/pkg/FR-2008-06-10/pdf/E8-12451.pdf

[54] 37 CFR § 1.134

[55] 37 CFR § 1.362

Chapter 2

[†]Described as "One of the top trial lawyers in the country," Bob Krupka tried over 75 cases to judgment, including 18 jury trials to verdict, during his 39 year career at Kirkland & Ellis LLP. Teams he led obtained verdicts totaling over $1 billion and recovered over $3 billion in settlements, including one of the largest patent settlements in history — $1.35 billion. He represents Fortune 500 companies and innovative individuals. See www.krupkalaw.com.

[1] 35 U.S.C. §154(a)(1).

[2] 35 U.S.C. §271(a). An exception, where lack of knowledge may be a defense, is indirect infringement, of which there are two principal types: (1) actively inducing someone else to infringe, which requires knowledge of the patent and an intent to cause the infringement (35 U.S.C. §271(b)), and (2) contributing to someone else's infringement, which requires selling or offering for sale a component to a patented combination knowing that it is specially made or adapted for use as a material part of an infringing combination and that it is not suitable for substantial noninfringing use. 35 U.S.C. §271(c).

[3] See, e.g., http://www.tennessean.com/story/money/2014/05/20/lawsuit-financing-carves-niche/9306059/ and http://www.patentlitigationfunding.com/litigation-funding.

[4] Jay P. Kesan and Gwendolyn G. Ball, How Are Patent Cases Resolved? An Empirical Examination of the Adjudication and Settlement of Patent Disputes, 84 Wash. U. L. Rev. 237, 254 (2006). Available at: http://digitalcommons.law.wustl.edu/lawreview/vol84/iss2/1

[5] http://techcrunch.com/2011/08/15/breaking-google-buys-motorola-for-12-5-billion/

[6] http://www.bloomberg.com/news/2011-09-14/google-purchases-1-023-patents-from-ibm-to-bolster-portfolio.html

[7] http://gadgets.ndtv.com/apple/news/apple-led-group-buys-nortel-patents-for-4-5-bn-225830

[8] Prior to the America Invents Act (AIA) in 2011, joinder rules allowed you to sue multiple infringers in the same lawsuit, even if their products were different. The AIA limited this ability by restricting joinder. Nevertheless, you can still file a separate lawsuit against each alleged infringer, and ask the court to consolidate them for discovery and other pretrial purposes. Courts are usually eager to do this because it simplifies their work. The practical effect is almost the same as a single case with multiple defendants.

[9] If the alleged infringer is the federal government itself, or a government contractor, the proper venue is the Court of Federal Claims. 28 U.S.C. §1491

Another forum for enforcing a U.S. patent against imported goods exists at the U.S. International Trade Commission (ITC) in Washington, D.C. 19 U.S.C. §1330. The ITC has the power to investigate alleged infringement and bar goods found to infringe from entering the country. This can be a very effective tool against infringing imports, especially if all the sources of those imports are unknown. The ITC's jurisdiction is "quasi in rem" so that the infringing goods themselves provide the basis for jurisdiction, allowing their adjudication and prohibition even if the source of the goods is unknown. Proceedings before the ITC are extremely expedited, usually taking 18 months or less, and can be very expensive.

[10] 28 U.S.C. § 2201(a); See *MedImmune, Inc. v. Genentech, Inc.*, 127 S.Ct. 764 (2007) and *SanDisk Corp. v. STMicroelectronics, Inc.*, 480 F.3d 1372 (Fed. Cir. 2007).

[11] See Rules 38-39, Fed. R. Civ. P.

[12] PricewaterhouseCoopers, 2013 Patent Litigation Study, at 9; https://www.pwc.com/us/en/forensic-services/publications/assets/2012-patent-litigation-study.html.

[13] See Rules 3-5, and 7-8, Fed. R. Civ. P.

[14] See Rules 7-8, and 12, Fed. R. Civ. P.

[15] See Rule 13, Fed. R. Civ. P.

[16] See Rule 12(b), Fed. R. Civ. P.

[17] See 28 U.S.C. §1404(a)

[18] See Rules 8-9, Fed. R. Civ. P.

[19] 35 U.S.C §273, which provides a defense to patent infringement for someone who can prove, by clear and convincing evidence, that they acted in good faith and commercially used the subject matter of the patent in the U.S. at least one year before the effective filing date of the patent or the invention's first public disclosure.

[20] See Rules 8-9, and 12, Fed. R. Civ. P.

[21] See Rule 13, Fed. R. Civ. P.

[22] See Rule 7, Fed. R. Civ. P.

[23] See Rules 8 and 13, Fed. R. Civ. P.

[24] See the PTO's discussion of the AIA at http://www.uspto.gov/aia_implementation/index.jsp.

[25] See Rules 12, 16, and 26, Fed. R. Civ. P.

[26] See Rule 26(a), Fed. R. Civ. P.

[27] See Rule 26(c), Fed. R. Civ. P.

[28] See Rules 26-37, Fed. R. Civ. P.

[29] See Rule 34, Fed. R. Civ. P.

[30] See Rule 45, Fed. R. Civ. P.

[31] See Rules 26(b) and 33(a)(2), Fed. R. Civ. P.

[32] See Rule 33(a), Fed, R. Civ. P.

[33] See Rules 27-30, Fed. R. Civ. P.

[34] See Rule 31, Fed. R. Civ. P.

[35] See Rule 32, Fed. R. Civ. P.

[36] See Rule 36, Fed. R. Civ. P.

[37] See Rule 15, Fed. R. Civ. P.

[38] *Markman, et al. v. Westview Instruments, Inc.*, 517 U.S. 370 (1996).

[39] See Rule 56, Fed. R. Civ. P.

[40] See Rule 16(e), Fed. R. Civ. P.

[41] See generally, Rules 40-63, Fed. R. Civ. P.

[42] See Rule 48, Fed. R. Civ. P.

[43] See Rule 48(a) and (b), Fed. R. Civ. P.

[44] You can see this video at https://archive.org/details/gov.ntis.ava21157vnb1.

[45] See Rule 51, Fed. R. Civ. P.

[46] See Rule 49, Fed. R. Civ. P.

[47] See Rule 54, Fed. R. Civ. P.

[48] See Rule 50, Fed. R. Civ. P.

[49] *Burlington Indus., Inc. v. Dayco Corp.*, 849 F.2d 1418, 1422 (Fed. Cir.1988).

[50] *Kingsdown Medical Consultants, Ltd. v. Hollister, Inc.*, 863 F.2d 867, 872 (Fed.Cir. 1988).

[51] *Ferring B.V. v. Barr Laboratories, Inc.* 437 F.3d 1181, 1195 (Fed. Cir. 2006)(dissenting opinion).

[52] *Taltech Ltd. v. Esquel Apparel, Inc.*, 604 F.3d 1324, 1335 (Fed. Cir. 2010)(dissenting opinion).

[53] http://www.patentlyo.com/patent/2010/06/measuring-the-plague-of-inequitable-conduct.html

[54] *Therasense, Inc. v. Becton, Dickinson & Co., 649 F.3d 1276, passim (Fed. Cir. 2011).*

[55] *In re Seagate, 497 F.3d 1360, 1371 (en banc).*

[56] See Dennis Crouch, *How Many US Patents are In-Force?*, http://www.patentlyo.com/patent/2012/05/how-many-us-patents-are-in-force.html.

[57] *Bard Peripheral Vascular Inc. v. W.L. Gore & Assoc's. Inc.*, 682 F.3d 1003, 1006-07 (Fed. Cir. 2012).

[58] *Read Corp. v. Portec, Inc.*, 970 F.2d 816, 826-27 (Fed. Cir. 1992), abrogated in part by *Markman v. Westview Instruments, Inc., 52 F.3d 967 (Fed. Cir. 1995).*

[59] Christopher B. Seaman, *Willful Patent Infringement and Enhanced Damages After In Re Seagate: An Empirical Study,* 97 Iowa Law Review 417, 466; http://www.uiowa.edu/~ilr/issues/ILR_97-2_Seaman.pdf.

[60] 35 U.S.C. § 285

[61] *Mathis v. Spears*, 857 F.2d 749, 754 (Fed. Cir. 1988).

[62] S. Rep. No. 1503, 79th Cong., 2d Sess. (1946) (discussing the predecessor statute to 35 U.S.C. § 285)

[63] *Mathis v. Spears*, 857 F.2d 749, 754 (Fed. Cir. 1988) and *Brooks Furniture Mfg., Inc. v. Dutailier Int'l, Inc.*, 393 F. 3d 1378, 1381-2 (Fed. Cir. 2005).

[64] *Highmark Inc. v. Allcare Health Management System, Inc.* (572 U.S.__)(No. 12–1163. Argued February 26, 2014—Decided April 29, 2014).

[65] See Section 2.10, *infra*.

[66] *eBay Inc. v. MercExchange, L.L.C,* 547 U.S.388 (2006).

[67] See footnote 7, *supra*.

[68] See Rules 50 and 59, Fed. R. Civ. P.

[69] http://www.patentlyo.com/files/caseload_patent_infringement_affirmance_and_reversal_rates_2001-2010.pdf

[70] For a deeper understanding of appellate standards of review in patent cases, see Michel, Paul R., Circuit Judge, CAFC, "Appellate Advocacy—One Judge's Point of View, The Federal Circuit Bar Journal, Vol. 1, No. 2, Summer 1991 (makes analogy to baseball and is readable).

[71] Ted Sichelman, Myths of (Un)Certainty at the Federal Circuit, 43 Loy. L.A. L. Rev. 1161 (2010).

Available at: http://digitalcommons.lmu.edu/llr/vol43/iss3/27

[72] http://www.adr.org/aaa

[73] In 2012, one article suggests 56 percent of patent infringement cases filed in the United States were filed by trolls: https://lexmachina.com/2013/04/09/lex-machina-releases-the-aia-500-expanded/.

Another put the number at 62 percent: http://www.lexology.com/library/detail.aspx?g=1e1a0e7b-d9a6-4366-818f-a6935ab0fabe&utm_source=Lexology+Daily+Newsfeed&utm_medium=HTML+email+-+Body+-+Federal+section&utm_campaign=Calibar+IP+section+subscriber+daily+feed&utm_content=Lexology+Daily+Newsfeed+2013-04-29&utm_term.

[74] See, http://www.americanbar.org/publications/landslide/2012_13/march_april/joinder_over_year_after_america_invents_act.html

[75] "See http://www.ipo.org/wp-content/uploads/2013/06/Patent-Litigation-Bills-Summary-Comparison-Chart-EXPANDED.pdf, http://patentlyo.com/patent/2013/03/guest-editorial-throwing-trolls-off-the-bridge.html, http://www.ipwatchdog.com/2013/08/13/congress-sirens-song-patent-litigation/id=44573/, and https://truthonthemarket.com/2013/03/15/the-shield-act-when-bad-studies-make-bad-laws/."

[76] http://www.nytimes.com/2013/06/05/business/president-moves-to-curb-patent-suits.html?_r=0

[77] http://www.patentlyo.com/patent/2013/05/patent-troll-panel-at-yale-law-school.html

[78] http://www.nytimes.com/2013/06/05/opinion/make-patent-trolls-pay-in-court.html

[79] http://www.techdirt.com/articles/20130605/09065423327/chief-patent-judge-speaks-out-against-patent-trolls.shtml

[80] http://mcsmith.blogs.com/eastern_district_of_texas/2014/02/eastern-district-of-texas-resumes-case-tracking-with-track-b-for-patent-cases.html

[81] http://www.conversantip.com/blog/states-step-up-fight-against-patent-trolls/

[82] http://www.conversantip.com/blog/us-administration-takes-smart-steps-to-strengthen-the-patent-system/

[83] http://www.conversantip.com/news-article/iam-guidelines-for-ethical-patent-licensing-provide-basis-for-new-approach-to-the-troll-debate/ and http://finance.yahoo.com/news/finjan-holdings-commits-licensing-best-130000509.html

the United States, 1783-1906 (2 ed., pg. 11). Retrieved from http://books.google.com/books?id=xNA9AAAAIAAJ&oe=UTF-8

[8] Op. cit., Khan.

[9] *"The Question of Copyright,"* compiled by George Haven Putnam, G.P. Putnam's Sons, New York, 1896, courtesy of Zorina Khan.

[10] Arthur M. Schlesinger, *The Rise of the City, 1878-1898,* McMillan, New York, 1933.

[11] Alice Hackett and James Burke, *Eighty Years of Best Sellers, 1895-1975,* Bowker, New York, 1971.

[12] Op. cit., Khan.

[13] Wheaton v. Peters, 33 U.S. 8 Pet. 591 591 (1834) Retrieved from http://supreme.justia.com/cases/federal/us/33/591/case.html *courtesy of B. Zorina Khan.*

[14] Robert Merges, Peter Menell, and Mark Lemley, *Intellectual Property in the New Technical Age*, Aspen Publishers, New York, 2009.

[15] Osgood v. A.S. Aloe Instruments Co. (1897) Retrieved from http://bulk.resource.org/courts.gov/c/F1/0083/0083.f1.0470.pdf

[16] Library of Congress. (1918). *Decisions of the United States Courts Involving Copyright: no. 18.* http://www.copyright.gov/legislation/pl109-9.html (p. 78). Washington D.C.: Government Printing Office.

[17] Schuyler v. Curtis 15 N.Y.S. 787 (1891) Retrieved from: http://faculty.uml.edu/sgallagher/SchuylervCurtis.htm

[18] Apple Computer, Inc. v. Franklin Computer Corp., 714 F.2d 1240 (3d Cir. 1983) Retrieved from http://bulk.resource.org/courts.gov/c/F2/714/714.F2d.1240.82-1582.html

[19] Arthur R. Miller and Michael H. Davis, *Intellectual Property: Patents, Trademarks, and Copyright in a Nutshell*. (5th ed., p. 25). St. Paul MN: West Publishing Co., 2007.

[20] Derived from 17 U.S.C., § 106 Retrieved from http://www.law.cornell.edu/uscode/text/17/106

[21] Derived from 17 U.S.C., § 302 (c) Retrieved from http://www.law.cornell.edu/uscode/text/17/302

[22] 17 U.S.C., § 101 Retrieved from http://www.law.cornell.edu/uscode/text/17/101

[23] Derived from Bobbs–Merrill Co. v. Straus, 210 U.S. 339, 350 (1908) Retrieved from http://caselaw.lp.findlaw.com/scripts/getcase.pl?court=us&vol=210&invol=339

[24] John Wiley & Sons, Inc. v. Kirtsaeng, 654 F.3d 210, 99 U.S.P.Q.2d 1641, 2011 ILRC 2481 (2d Cir. 2011) [2011 BL 211086] Retrieved from http://bit.ly/HOTFlb

[25] Zemer, L. (2011). *Moral Rights: Limited Edition.* Boston University Law Review, 91(4), 1519. Retrieved from http://www.bu.edu/law/journals-archive/bulr/volume91n4/documents/zemer.pdf.

[26] 17 U.S.C., § 411

[27] Derived from Computer Assoc. Int'l v. Altai, Inc., 982 F.2d 693, 701 (2nd Cir. 1992) Retrieved from homepages.law.asu.edu/~dkarjala/cyberlaw/ComputerAssocsVAltai(2ndCir1992).doc

[28] Mitchell, D. (2011, November 28). *Kanye West Invokes Nietzsche in Copyright Battle*. Retrieved from http://fortune.com/2011/11/28/kanye-west-invokes-nietzsche-in-copyright-battle.

[29] Derived from 17 U.S.C., § 504 Retrieved from http://www.law.cornell.edu/uscode/text/17/504

[30] Kravets, D. (2009, June 18). *Jury in RIAA Trial Slaps $2 Million Fine on Jammie Thomas*. Retrieved from http://www.wired.com/threatlevel/2009/06/riaa-jury-slaps-2-million-fine-on-jammie-thomas/

[31] http://scholar.google.com/scholar_case?case=7153487234107458840&hl=en&as_sdt=2&as_vis=1&oi=scholarr

[32] Derived from 18 U.S.C., § 2319 Retrieved from http://www.law.cornell.edu/uscode/text/18/2319

[33] 17 U.S.C., § 107 Retrieved from http://www.law.cornell.edu/uscode/text/17/107

[34] Williams & Wilkins v. United States, 487 F.2d 1345 (1973) Retrieved from http://fairuse.stanford.edu/primary_materials/cases/c487F2d1345.html

[35] *Campbell v. Acuff-Rose Music*, 510 U.S. 569 (1994) Retrieved from http://www.law.cornell.edu/supct/html/92-1292.ZS.html

[36] 17 U.S.C. § 108 Retrieved from http://www.law.cornell.edu/uscode/text/17/108

[37] Library of Congress. (2009, November). *Reproduction of Copyrighted Works By Educators and Librarians*. Retrieved from http://www.copyright.gov/circs/circ21.pdf

[38] Derived from The President and Fellows of Harvard College. (2008). *Copyright Law Guidelines*. Retrieved from http://hfs.fas.harvard.edu/copyright.html

[39] Copyright Law Revision (House Report No. 94-1476) Retrieved from http://www.copyright.gov/history/law/clrev_94-1476.pdf

[40] Arthur R. Miller and Michael H. Davis, *Intellectual Property: Patents, Trademarks, and Copyright in a Nutshell*. (5th ed., p. 25). St. Paul MN: West Publishing Co., 2007.

[41] Library of Congress. (2003). *The Computer Software Rental Amendments Act of 1990: The Nonprofit Library Lending Exemption to the "Rental Right"*. Retrieved from http://www.copyright.gov/reports/software_ren.html

[42] Technology, Education, and Copyright Harmonization (TEACH) Act of 2002, Div. C, Tit. III, Subtitle C of the 21st Century Department of Justice Appropriations Authorization Act, Pub. L. No. 107-273, 116 Stat. 1758, 1910 (Nov. 2, 2002) Retrieved from http://thomas.loc.gov/cgi-bin/query/z?c107:S.487.ES:

[43] Derived from Small Webcaster Settlement Act of 2002 (SWSA), Pub. L. No. 107-321, 116 Stat. 2780 (Dec. 4, 2002) Retrieved from http://thomas.loc.gov/cgi-bin/query/z?c107:H.R.5469.ENR:

[44] Family Entertainment and Copyright Act of 2005, Pub. L. No. 109-9, 119 Stat. 218 (Apr. 27, 2005), codified at various sections of Titles 17 and 18 U.S. Code. Retrieved from http://www.copyright.gov/legislation/pl109-9.html

[45] Derived from Creative Commons. (2012). *About the Licenses*. Retrieved from http://creativecommons.org/licenses/

[46] Chan, L., Cuplinskas, D., Eisen, M., Friend, F., Genova, Y., Guedon, J., Hagemann, M., Harnad, S., Johnson R., Kupryte, R., Manna, M., Rev I., Segbert, M., Souza, S., Suber, P., & Velterop J. (2002, February 24). *Budapest Open Access Initiative*. Retrieved from http://www.soros.org/openaccess/read

Chapter 4

[1] Allen Brettman, *"Creator of Nike's Famed Swoosh Remembers Its Conception 40 Years Later,"* the Oregonian, June 15, 2011.

[2] Arthur R. Miller and Michael H. Davis, *Intellectual Property: Patents, Trademarks, and Copyright in a Nutshell*. (5th ed., p. 25). St. Paul MN: West Publishing Co., 2007.

[3] Gary Richardson, *Brand Names Before the Industrial Revolution*, National Bureau of Economic Research, NBER Working Paper No. 13930, April, 2008.

[4] McKenna, M. *The Normative Foundations of Trademark Law* (December 30, 2010). Notre Dame Law Review, Vol. 82, No. 5, p. 1839, 2007. Retrieved from SSRN: http://ssrn.com/abstract=889162.

[5] Keith M. Stolte, *How Early Did Anglo-American Trademark Law Begin? An Answer to Schechter's Conundrum*, Fordham Intellectual Property, Media and Entertainment Law Journal, Volume 8, Issue 2, 1997.

[6] See *United States v. Steffens* 100 U.S. 82 (1879); *United States v. Wittemann* 100 U.S. 82 (1879); *United States v. Johnson* 100 U.S. 82 (1879) Retrieved from http://caselaw.lp.findlaw.com/cgibin/getcase.pl?court=us&vol=100&invol=82.

[7] Harvard University. (2012). *Overview of Trademark Law*. Retrieved from http://cyber.law.harvard.edu/metaschool/fisher/domain/tm.htm.

[8] Op. cit., Miller and Davis.

[9] 15 U.S.C. §1051 Retrieved from http://www.law.cornell.edu/uscode/text/15/1051.

[10] United States Patent and Trademark Office. (2012, May 24). *Trademarks*. Retrieved from http://www.uspto.gov/inventors/trademarks.jsp.

[11] United States Patent and Trademark Office. (2012, March 09). *What Is a Collective Membership Mark?*. Retrieved from http://www.uspto.gov/faq/trademarks.jsp#_Toc275426676.

[12] United States Patent and Trademark Office. (2012, March 09). *Frequently Asked Questions About Trademarks*. Retrieved from http://www.uspto.gov/faq/trademarks.jsp.

[13] United States Patent and Trademark Office. (2012, August 09). *Trademark Manual of Examining Procedure* § 1202 . Retrieved from https://mpep.uspto.gov/RDMS/TMEP/current#/current/TMEP-1200d1e718.html.

[14] *Qualitex Co. v. Jacobson Products Co.*, 514 U.S. 159, 7 (1995) Retrieved from: http://www.todaysengineer.org/2003/Feb/files/514U.S.159.pdf.

[15] Henderson, C. *International Standards for the Protection of Intellectual Property Rights: Trademarks and Geographical*

Indications. Retrieved from USPTO website: http://www.uspto.gov/ip/events/LebanonTrademarkJuly2010wonotes.pdf.

[16] See *Southco, Inc. v. Kanebridge Corp.*, 258 F.3d 148, 149 n.2 (3d Cir. 2001).

[17] See *In re Dana Corp.*, 12 USPQ2d 1748 (TTAB 1989).

[18] See *In re Union Oil Co.*, 33 USPQ 43 (C.C.P.A. 1937).

[19] In re Clarke, 17 U.S.P.Q.2d 1238 (T.T.A.B. 1990) Retrieved from http://ipmall.info/hosted_resources/TTAB_Decisions/TTAB_Appeal_758429.asp.

[20] See Constine, J. (2011, December 20). *Don't Let Your Company's Sound Be Stolen, Trademark it With Trademarkia*. Retrieved from http://techcrunch.com/2011/12/20/tradmark-sound-trademarkia/.

[21] Star Industries, Inc. v. Bacardi & Co., LTD., 412 F.3d 373 (2d Circuit, 2005) Retrieved from http://bulk.resource.org/courts.gov/c/F3/412/412.F3d.373.04-1753-.04-0831-.html.

[22] 932 F.2d 1113, 1117 (CA5 1991), derived from: http://caselaw.lp.findlaw.com/scripts/getcase.pl?court=us&vol=505&invol=763.

[23] Op. cit., Miller and Davis.

[24] *Abercrombie & Fitch Co. v. Hunting World, Inc.*, 537 F.2d 4, Court of Appeals. Retrieved from http://scholar.google.com/scholar_case?case=9011105700430131407&q=abercrombie+%26+fitch+v.+hunting+world&hl=en&as_sdt=2,38&as_vis=1.

[25] Derived from: http://www.bitlaw.com/trademark/degrees.html.

[26] Op. cit., *Abercrombie & Fitch Co. v. Hunting World, Inc.*

[27] United States Patent and Trademark Office. (2011, January). *Trademark Manual of Examining Procedure (TMEP) - 8th Edition*. Retrieved from http://tess2.uspto.gov/tmdb/tmep/1200.htm.

[28] 15 U.S.C. §1115.

[29] Inwood Laboratories Inc. v. Ives Laboratories, Inc., 456 U.S. 844 (1982) Retrieved from

http://supreme.justia.com/cases/federal/us/456/844/case.html.

[30] United States Patent and Trademark Office. (2012, March 09). *Frequently Asked Questions About Trademarks*. Retrieved from http://www.uspto.gov/faq/trademarks.jsp.

[31] United States Patent and Trademark Office. (2011, January). *TMEP 1211.01 "Primarily Merely A Surname"*. Retrieved from http://tess2.uspto.gov/tmdb/tmep/1200.htm.

[32] Op. cit., Miller and Davis.

[33] United States Patent and Trademark Office. (2011, January). *TMEP 1211.01(a) "Primarily Merely A Surname."* Retrieved from http://tess2.uspto.gov/tmdb/tmep/1200.htm.

[34] United States Patent and Trademark Office. (2011, January). *TMEP 1211.01(b) "Primarily Merely A Surname."* Retrieved from http://tess2.uspto.gov/tmdb/tmep/1200.htm.

[35] Derived from: http://www.uspto.gov/faq/trademarks.jsp#_Toc275426681.

[36] *Protecting Your Trademark: Basic Facts About Trademarks*, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, derived from: http://www.uspto.gov/trademarks/basics/BasicFacts.pdf.

[37] United States Patent and Trademark Office. (21 August, 2012). *Maintain/Renew a Registration: How to Keep a Registration Alive*. Retrieved from http://www.uspto.gov/trademarks/process/maintain/prfaq.jsp.

[38] CBS News. (23 May, 2012). *Ford Regains Assets, Including Blue Logo, After Credit Upgrade*. Retrieved from http://www.cbsnews.com/8301-505164_162-57440003-10391734/ford-regains-assets-including-blue-logo-after-credit-upgrade/.

[39] "Intangible Asset Market Value," Ocean Tomo, Retrieved from: http://www.oceantomo.com/2015/03/04/2015-intangible-asset-market-value-study.

[40] See 15 U.S.C. § 1052 Retrieved from http://www.law.cornell.edu/uscode/text/15/1052.

[41] In re Coors Brewing Co., Fed. Cir. 2003 Retrieved from: https://e-foia.uspto.gov/Foia/RetrievePdf?system=FCA&flNm=03-1050_1.

[42] Inwood Labs., Inc. v. Ives Labs., Inc., 456 U.S. 844, 854 (1982) Retrieved from http://scholar.google.com/scholar_case?case=5946191720195736097&hl=en&as_sdt=2&as_vis=1&oi=scholarr.

[43] Inwood Labs., Inc. v. Ives Labs., Inc., 456 U.S. 844, 854 (1982) Retrieved from http://scholar.google.com/scholar_case?case=5946191720195736097&hl=en&as_sdt=2&as_vis=1&oi=scholarr.

[44] Derived from: http://www.law.cornell.edu/wex/vicarious_infringement.

[45] See William R. Warner & Co. v. Eli Lilly & Co., 265 U.S. 526 (1924) Retrieved from http://caselaw.lp.findlaw.com/scripts/getcase.pl?court=us&vol=265&invol=526.

Chapter 5

*Randall E. Kahnke and Kerry L. Bundy are partners at Faegre Baker Daniels, LLP. They are accomplished trial lawyers who have handled trade secrets disputes and complex commercial litigation across the United States and touching several continents. They have been recognized as leading lawyers by Chambers USA, SuperLawyers, and Best Lawyers In America. The authors would like to thank William Brunnquell, a Summer Associate at Faegre Baker Daniels LLP, for his contributions to Chapter 5.

[1] *"Economic Impact of Trade Secret Theft,"* PricewaterhouseCoopers, retrieved from: http://pwc.to/1sVx3AP.

[2] 489 U.S. 141 (1989).

[3] Michael Risch, Why Do We Have Trade Secrets?, 11 Intellectual Property L. Rev. 1 (2007) (citing Restatement (Third) of Unfair Competition § 39 cmt. a (1995).

[4] The Uniform Law Commission, also known as the National Conference of Commissioners on Uniform State Laws, is a nonpartisan, nonprofit organization that promotes the uniformity of law from state to state. The Commission publishes "model laws" that states are then able to adopt and enact.

[5] The UTSA defines a trade secret as "information, including a formula, pattern, compilation, program, device, method, technique, or process, that (i) derives independent economic value, actual or potential, from not being generally known to, and not being readily ascertainable by proper means by, other persons who can obtain value from its disclosure or use, and (ii) is the subject of efforts that are reasonable under the circumstances to maintain its secrecy."

[6] Compare American Fam. Mut. Ins. Co. v. Roth 485 F.3d 930, 933 (7th Cir. 2007); APG Inc. v. MCI Telecommunications Corp. 436 F.3d 294, 307 (1st Cir 2006).

[7] See e.g. Ruckelshaus v. Monsanto Co., 467 U.S. 986, 1002 (1984); Speedry Chemical Products, Inc. v. Carter's Ink Co., 306 F.2d 328, 331 (2d Cir 1962).

[8] See Morlife, Inc. v. Perry, 56 Cal. App. 4th 1514 (1st Dist. 1997).

[9] See MicroStrategy Inc. v. Business Objects, S.A., 331 F. Supp. 2d 396,417 (E.D. Va. 2004).

[10] Compare Inflight Newspapers, Inc. v. Magazines In-Flight, LLC, 990 F. Supp. 119, 129-30 (E.D.N.Y. 1997) (holding that the plaintiff's customer lists were not trade secrets because the customer identity could be easily found through publicly available means, such as the Internet, trade shows, and trade directories) with North Atl. Instruments, Inc. v. Haber, 188 F.3d 38, 44 (2d Cir. N.Y. 1999) (finding that a customer list kept in confidence may be treated as a trade secret).

[11] See Ruckelshaus v. Monsanto Co., 467 U.S. 986, 1002 (1984).

[12] See Lexis-Nexis v. Beer, 41 F. Supp.2d 950 (D. Minn. 1999).

[13] Compare Electro-Craft Corp. v. Controlled Motion, Inc., 332 N.W.2d 890 (Minn. 1983) (confidentiality agreement signed by employees failed to identify with sufficient particularity what were and were not trade secrets; plaintiff began conducting "exit interviews" ten days after litigation commenced) and Gordon Employment, Inc. v. Jewel, 356 N.W.2d 738 (Minn. Ct. App. 1984) (confidentiality never discussed with employees).

[14] Id.

[15] Id.

[16] See Gemisys Corp. v. Phoenix American, Inc., 186 F.R.D. 551, 558-62 (N.D. Cal. 1999).

[17] Electro-Craft Corp. v. Controlled Motion, Inc., 332 N.W.2d 890 (Minn. 1983) (no technical documents were marked "confidential").

[18] Id. (confidentiality procedures inadequate where, among other things, plaintiff allowed public tour of its plants).

[19] See e.g. *Mobile Med. Int'l Corp. v. United States*, 95 Fed. Cl. 706, 739 (Fed. Cl. 2010) (finding that although plaintiff may have taken some measures to maintain the secrecy of its trade information, plaintiff's assertions of confidentiality and the steps taken to protect its information were wholly undermined by its publicly displaying a model unit at a trade show).

[20] Gallowhur Chem. Corp. v. Schwerdle, 37 N.J. Super. 385, 117 A.2d 416, 423, 108 U.S.P.Q. 260 (1955) (information communicated in a public lecture revealed trade secret); Fishing Concepts, Inc. v. Ross, 1985 WL 1549 (D. Minn. 1985) (information claimed secret was revealed in article published in advertising magazine).

[21] Id.

[22] See Unif. Trade Secrets Act § 1(2)(i), U.L.A (1985).

[23] See Unif. Trade Secrets Act § 1(1), U.L.A (1985).

[24] See Unif. Trade Secrets Act §§ 2(2)(ii)(A)-(C), U.L.A (1985).

[25] Surgidev Corp. v. Eye Technology Inc., 648 F. Supp. 661, 695 (D. Minn. 1986), aff'd, 828 F.2d 452 (8th Cir. 1987).

[26] For example, in *Convolve, Inc. v. Compaq Computer Corp.*, 2006 U.S. Dist. LEXIS 13848, the plaintiffs asserted that the defendants were misappropriating trade secrets in violation of a nondisclosure agreement. As evidence of this violation, the plaintiffs showed that the defendants tried unsuccessfully to reverse engineer the trade-secret-protected software. That evidence, inter

alia, was sufficient to withstand a motion for summary judgment.

[27] See Watermark Solid Surface, Inc. v. Sta-Care, Inc. 2009 WL 723199 (W.D. Wis. 2009) (discussing waiver of trade secret protection); Christianson v. Colt Industries Operating Corp., 766 F.Supp. 670 (C.D. Ill. 1991) (outlining common equitable defenses in trade secrets cases).

[28] See Unif. Trade Secrets Act §§ 2-5, U.L.A (1985).

[29] Standard Brands, Inc. v. Zumpe, 264 F. Supp. 254, 269 (E.D. La. 1967).

[30] See 3M v. Pribyl, 259 F.3d 587, 598 (7th Cir 2001) (upholding broad injunction on use of material in employee handbook, as overly specific injunctions may invite evasion).

[31] See, Cherne Indus., Inc. v. Grounds & Associates, 278 N.W.2d 81 (Minn. 1979).

[32] See, e.g., Surgidev Corp. v. Eye Technology, Inc., 828 F.2d 452, 456-457 (8th Cir. 1987) (affirming 15-month injunction based on the period of time that would be required for independent development of the protected information).

[33] See, Restatement (Third) of Unfair Competition Section 44, comment f.

[34] See e.g., General Electric Co. v. Sung, 843 F. Supp. 776, 780-781 (D. Mass. 1994) (seven-year product injunction, taking into account the willfulness of the misappropriation).

[35] See, e.g., Doubleclick v. Henderson, No. 116914/97 (N.Y. Sup. Ct. Nov. 5, 1997) (granting an injunction restraining two former employees from competing with their former employer for a period of six months).

[36] See, Merck & Co. Inc v. Lyon, 941 F. Supp. 1443 (M.D.N.C. 1996). See also Allis Chalmers Manf. Co. v. Continental Aviation and Eng. Corp., 255 F. Supp. 645 (E.D. Mich. 1966) (injunction limited to research as to a particular type of pump); but see Union Carbide Corp. v. UGI Corp., 731 F.2d 1186 (5th Cir. 1984) (affirming injunction against use of information in 14 broad areas).

[37] PepsiCo, Inc. v. Redmond, 54 F.3d 1262, 1272 (7th Cir 1995).

[38] See e.g., Mikes Train House, Inc. v. Lionel, L.L.C., 472 F.3d 398, 413-15 (6th Cir. 2006).

[39] See, e.g., Aries Information Sys., Inc. v. Pacific Management Sys. Corp., 366 N.W.2d 366 (Minn. Ct. App. 1985).

[40] See Unif. Trade Secrets Act § 3(b), U.L.A (1985).

[41] Reingold v. Swiftships, Inc., 210 F.3d 320, 323 (5th Cir. 2000).

[42] Reingold v. Swiftships, Inc., 210 F.3d 320, 323 (5th Cir. 2000).

[43] See Unif. Trade Secrets Act § 3(b), U.L.A (1985).

[44] See Electronic Data Systems Corp. v. Heinemann, 493 S.E.2d 132 (Ga. Sup. Ct. 1997).

[45] See, e.g., Gordon Employment, Inc. v. Jewe1, 356 N.W.2d 738 (Minn. Ct. App. 1984).

[46] See Unif. Trade Secrets Act § 4 (comment), U.L.A (1985).

Glossary

Chapter 1

patent An intellectual property right granted by the government of a nation to an inventor that gives him or her the exclusive right to the invention for up to 20 years, in exchange for disclosing the details of the new technology to society for its ultimate benefit.

intellectual property Creations of intellect, such as inventions and artistic works.

"bargain" or contract theory The premise that people will be encouraged to invent new products and services that benefit society if they are likely to profit by doing so.

"natural rights" theory The premise that the product of mental labor is by all rights the property of its creator, no less than the product of physical labor is the property of its creator (or of the person who purchases it from that creator).

novelty A patent requirement that ensures that the idea is new.

non-obviousness A patent requirement that ensures that the idea is inventive.

utility A patent requirement that ensures that the idea is usable and beneficial.

working requirements Regulations that forced patentees to manufacture products based on their patents within two or three years of issuance or lose their patent rights.

non-practicing entities An entity created by the Founding Fathers to expand the pool of inventors in their then-backward economy to include ordinary citizens without the wealth or resources to commercialize their own inventions.

utility patents The most common type of patents, which preclude others from making, using, or selling the invention during the term of the patent, which begins on the grant date and ends 20 years from the filing date (for an average of 17 to 18 years).

plant patents A type of patent to protect new species of plants. The criteria is novelty, distinctiveness, and non-obviousness.

design patents A type of patent granted to protect new, original, and non-obvious ornamental designs for articles of manufacture.

ornamentality A parent requrement that ensures that the idea is decorative.

patent examiner The person who reviews the patent application to determine if the invention meets the statutory requirements for patentability.

first office action A document in which the patent examiner approves, rejects, or requires additional information about the claims and/or other elements of the application.

Chapter 2

liability violation A type of violation in which you do not need to know that you are infringing a patent, or that a patent even exists, to be liable for patent infringement.

doctrine of equivalents The legal rule that prevents an infringer from copying the essence of the invention, but making insignificant modifications in an effort to avoid infringement.

royalty Money by offered the alleged infringer a license to practice your invention.

Complaint A legal document filed that sets out why the filing party believes their claim against the defendent is valid.

venue The location for the case.

laches Waiting an unreasonable time to make your claim

estoppel Misleading your opponent into believing you would not file suit.

Counterclaims New charges filed against the plaintiff.

post-grant review A trial proceeding that asks the PTO to take another look at whether the patent is valid, i.e., whether it should have been granted in the first place.

covered business methods review To review patents that claim a method or corresponding apparatus for performing data processing or other operations used in the practice, administration, or management of a financial product or service.

America Invents Act (AIA) A 2011 act that substantially revised the nation's patent laws in a number of important ways.

stay A temporary suspention of a case ordered by the court.

Scheduling Order A specification of dates by which certain activities must be concluded, issues by the court at, or shortly after, the pretrial conference.

Markman hearings Hearings in which parties are permitted to provide their competing arguments in briefs to the court, usually after discovery is completed, and make an oral argument on their respective positions to the court.

Summary Judgment a procedure that obviates a trial where one of the parties can show that its opponent cannot win—as a matter of law.

willful A patent infringement in which the the accused infringer "acted despite an objectively high likelihood that its actions constituted infringement of a valid patent," and the "objectively defined risk . . . was either known or so obvious that it should have been known to the accused infringer."

Chapter 3

Statute of Anne A 1709 copyright statute which stipulated that a copyright could be obtained by anyone, and instead of a perpetual right, the term was limited to 14 years with the right to renew for one additional 14-year term.

work for hire A work prepared by an employee within the scope of his or her employment, or a work specially ordered or commissioned for use as a contribution to a collective work.

infringement A violation of the exclusive rights of its owner of a copyright or any other intellectual property.

Copyright Act of 1976 An act which extended copyright protection to works performed over cable TV and music performed via digital audio transmission.

No Electronic Theft Act of 1997 An act which made it a criminal offense to reproduce or distribute music by electronic means (i.e., over the Internet).

Digital Millennium Copyright Act of 1998 (DMCA) An act which made it a crime to disseminate technology or services that could circumvent DRM measures used to control access to copyrighted movies, music, and books. It also increased penalties for copyright infringement on the Internet.

Sonny Bono Copyright Term Extension Act An Act which added an additional 20 years to the term of copyright—extending it for most works to the life of the author plus 70 years after the author is deceased.

Berne Convention An international agreement to ensure fair and reciprocal copyright protection for member nations.

Creative Commons A voluntary private sector alternative to traditional copyright that coordinates the creation and consumption of content among a wide variety of individuals and institutions—all without a hint of government intervention.

Chapter 4

trademark An intellectual property right granted by a government to an individual, business, or legal entity that creates and uses a distinctive word, name, symbol, or device to distinguish its products or services from those from any other entity in the marketplace.

service marks A mark with the same principle as trademarks except that these words, names, symbols, or devices identify and distinguish the source of a service.

certification marks Any word, phrase, symbol or design — or a combination of any of these — owned by one party which certifies the goods and services of others when they meet certain standards or requirements.

collective marks Any word, phrase, symbol, or design that is owned by a cooperative, association,

collective group, or organization and is used by its members to indicate the source of goods or services.

distinctiveness The fundamental and overriding requirement for a trademark. The requirement for distinctiveness is analogous to the requirement for *novelty* in patent rights and *originality* in copyright.

spectrum of distinctiveness A spectrum of the five basic categories of marks based on how distinct they are. The marks from most to least distinct are: Fanciful, arbitrary, suggestive, descriptive, and generic.

Fanciful marks Invented words, symbols or devices that have no relation to the good or service being sold and have no meaning other than to distinctly identify the product or service and distinguish it in the minds of consumers from those of any other vendor.

Arbitrary marks Real words in common usage that have no descriptive relationship to the product or service being sold.

Suggestive marks Marks that suggest or imply a quality or characteristic of the goods and services being sold. They require imagination, insight, or perception on the part of the consumer as to the nature of the article.

descriptive mark Marks that explicitly describes the purpose, nature, or an attribute of a product or service and is therefore not eligible for trademark registration unless a secondary meaning or association has been developed in the public's mind through usage.

generic marks Simply the common name for the goods and services being sold.

similarity So resembling another name or mark that it will be likely to cause confusion, or to cause mistake, or to deceive.

trademark dilution The weakening of a famous mark's ability to identify and distinguish goods or services, regardless of competition in the marketplace or the likelihood of confusion.

nominative fair use A condition that covers

many occasions on which a party other than the trademark owner is using the mark to refer to genuine goods or services.

classic fair use A condition that occurs when a trademark is used in good faith for its primary meaning, and no consumer confusion is likely to occur.

Chapter 5

trade secret A law that requires that the intellectual property to be protected not be publicly disclosed.

misappropriation Unauthorized use.

passive disclosure A type of disclosure that might occur by carelessly leaving documents containing trade secrets in open view when business associates from another company visit your facility.

active disclosure A type of disclosure that might occur during a guided tour of the facility when a tour guide reveals the nature of a project or process the company is working on or has recently perfected.

statutory damages A remedy that is stipulated within the statute rather the degree of harm to the plaintiff.

injunctive relief A remedy that allows the owner of a trade secret to obtain a court order prohibiting the actual or threatened misappropriation of a trade secret.

exemplary damages A remedy that is intended to deter the defendant and from engaging in similar conduct.

Index

A

Abercrombie & Fitch Co. v. Hunting World, Inc., 267
active disclosure, 295
actual damages, 330
Adobe, 269
Aereo, 232–233
Agreement on Trade-Related Aspects of Intellectual Property Rights (TRIPS), 89
Alice Paradox, 72
Alice v. CLS Bank, 71
allied rights, 164, 187, 188
Amazon, 85, 92, 98, 200, 227, 274
America Invents Act, 55, 94, 113, 122, 160
America Online, 262
American Arbitration Association, 156
American Bell Telephone, 43, 54
American Family Life Assurance Company, 262
American Rule, 146
American Society of Composers, Authors and Publishers (ASCAP), 220
Android, 109
Apple, 90, 91, 92, 109, 110, 192, 222, 228, 256, 263, 264, 267
arbitrary marks, 267
arbitration, 154, 156, 157, 158
AT&T, 54, 292
Audio Home Recording Act of 1993, 220

B

Bacardi, 263
Baldwin, Henry, 50, 167
Baldwin, Matthias, 38
Bally, Edward, 58
Barry, John, 181
Baskin-Robbins, 260
Beckett, Thomas, 174
Bell, Alexander Graham, 52, 54
Berne Convention, 182, 201, 224
Bilski v. Kappos, 70
binding arbitrations, 156
Blackberry, 75
Blanchard, Thomas, 43
BMW, 293
Bobbs-Merrill Co. v. Straus, 199
Bonito Boats v. Thunder Craft Boats, 298
Bossius, Donatus, 171
BP, 260
Brandeis, Louis, 188
Brewery, Löwenbräu, 248
Broadcast Music, Inc., 220
Budapest Open Access Initiative, 237
Burbank, Luther, 89

C

certification marks, 241, 256, 259
Chace Act, 182
Chanel, 260
Cinnabon, 262
claim construction, 129–131, 151, 152
Clarke, Celia, 261

classic fair use, 292, 294
close of discovery, 128
Coca-Cola, 264
collective marks, 241, 259
Commerce Clause, 244, 252
commercial activity, 241, 244, 253, 278
complaint, 102, 114, 116, 117, 120, 121, 128
Computer Software Rental Act of 1990, 219
Constitutional Convention, 178
Consumer Broadband and Digital Television Promotion Act of 2002, 224
contributory infringement, 221, 285
Conversant, 162
Cooper, James Fenimore, 182
Coppertone, 268
Copyright Act of 1909, 201
Copyright Act of 1976, 186, 217, 218
Copyright Royalty Board, 221, 231
Corning Glass, 67
counterclaims, 102, 121
Creative Commons, 235, 236

D

Davidson, Carolyn, 242, 243
de novo, 144, 146, 151, 153
descriptive marks, 268, 274
design patents, 90, 91, 100, 264
Diamond v. Chakrabarty, 76
Diamond v. Diehr, 71
Dickens, Charles, 39
Digital Millennium Copyright Act of 1998, 221
distinctiveness, 90, 241, 261, 266
Dominion Harbor Group, 162
Donaldson v. Beckett, 175
Donaldson, Alexander, 174
Dustbuster, 264
Dutton v. Cupples, 187

E

Early Bronze Age, 247
Eastman, George, 38
Edison, Thomas, 24, 38, 45, 63, 189
Elizabeth I, 28
Elsevier, 227
EMC, 110
entry of judgment, 139
equitable proceedings, 139
Ericsson, 110
estoppel, 102, 116, 121
ex parte reexamination, 122
exceptional case, 109, 139, 146, 161
exemplary damages, 295, 327, 330
Exxon, 260

F

Facebook, 76
fair use, 164, 168, 175, 185, 186, 211–218, 236, 292, 293, 294
Family Entertainment and Copyright Act of 2005, 229
Federal Dilution Revision Act of 2006, 287
Federal Judicial Center, 135

Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, 117
Federal Rules of Evidence, 117
Federal Trade Commission (FTC), 47
Federal Trademark Dilution Act of 1995, 287
file wrapper, 129, 130
final pretrial conference, 125, 131
final pretrial order, 131
first office action, 98, 99
first-sale doctrine, 198, 199, 200, 201
Folger, Benjamin, 51
Ford, 280
Foucault, Michel, 174
Founding Fathers, 34, 42, 74, 177
Free Software Foundation, 225
Fulton, Robert, 62

G

Gajarsa, Arthur J., 141
Gaye, Marvin, 207
generic marks, 268
geographic marks, 272
Geogri, 262, 263
Gershwin, George, 223
Gilbert, William, 67
Girl Scouts, 257
Good Housekeeping, 256
Google, 109, 110, 222, 223, 267, 269, 277, 287
Government Accountability Office (GAO), 44
Gray, Elisha, 52
Greyhound, 256

H

Harvard Business Press, 227
Hawthorne, Nathaniel, 182, 183
Highmark, 147, 161
Holloway, D.P., 36
Honda, 292, 293
Honeywell, 264
Hostess Twinkies, 252
House Judiciary Committee, 239
Howe, Elias, 38, 44, 45

I

IBM, 51, 72, 110
improper means, 318, 319
In re Bilski, 70
incontestability, 279
Industrial Revolution, 30, 34, 38, 45, 54, 248
inequitable conduct, 139, 140, 141, 142
infringement, 42, 46, 52–53
  enforcement, 103–105
  litigating, 112–121
  patent, 136–148, 151, 153
  copyright, 160, 164, 166, 186–190, 199, 202–214, 222
  trademark, 248, 249, 263, 271, 284–292
initial disclosures, 116, 124
injunctive relief, 148, 187, 209, 289, 290, 295, 327, 328
intellectual property, 19
  U.S. history, 20, 21, 25, 33, 36
  U.S. law, 50, 52
  eligibility, 75

copyright, 165, 169, 177, 183, 186, 194, 204, 207, 224
trademark, 242–244, 281, 289
trade secret, 295–299
protections, 311–314
misappropriation, 320, 325
intent-to-use, 279
inter partes review, 122
International Trade Commission (ITC), 148
International Trademark Association, 286
Internet Radio Fairness Act, 231
interrogatories, 126, 127, 128
Irving, Washington, 35

J

Jackson, Michael, 197
James I, 28
Jefferson, Thomas, 35, 36, 41, 58, 74, 177
Jobs, Steve, 228
Justice Samuel Freeman Miller, 251

K

Kazaa, 208
Kickstarter, 82
Kleenex, 269
Knight, Phil, 242, 243
Knox, Henry, 41
Kodak, 267

L

laches, 102, 116, 121
Lacoste, 263
Library of Congress, 166, 177
licensed, 43, 44, 45, 46, 173, 199, 237, 264, 281
Licensing Executives Society of the U.S. and Canada (LES), 162
Lincoln, Abraham, 22
LinkedIn, 285
literary work, 165, 167, 178, 181, 192, 244
litigation, 51–55, 107–152
Longfellow, Henry Wadsworth, 182
Lowell v. Lewis, 50
Lully, Jean-Baptiste, 172

M

Machina, Lex, 53
MacMillan, 227
made for hire, 197, 198, 237
Madison, James, 35, 37
Manual of Patenting Examination Procedure (MPEP), 99
Markman hearings, 129
McLean, John, 169, 187
mediation, 154–156
Metallica v. Napster, 222
MGM, 262
Michel, Paul, 53, 86
Microsoft, 110, 225, 227, 294
misappropriation, 187, 295, 297, 298, 303–307, 318–330
moral rights, 201, 247
Morse, Samuel, 67, 69
motion for a new trial, 139, 149
motion for judgment as a matter of law, 139, 148

Motorola Mobility, 109
Munn and Company, 24
Myriad Genetics, 77

N

Napster, 221, 222
National Federation of Independent Business (NFIB), 47
NBC, 232, 262
Nike, 242, 243, 256, 263, 266, 278, 289
Niles, Hezekiah, 35
No Electronic Theft Act of 1997, 221
nominative fair use, 292, 294
non-obviousness, 18, 41, 74, 80–86, 90, 91
non-practicing entities, 43, 159
Nortel, 110
notice of allowance, 253, 279
novelty, 18, 41, 74, 81–86, 90, 91, 166, 194, 266, 297

O

obnoxious laws, 180
Octane Fitness, 147, 161
Oracle, 109, 267
originality, 194, 247, 266
ornamentality, 91

P

Pallante, Maria A., 239
Pandora, 221, 231, 232
Parker v. Flook, 69
passive disclosure, 295
patent, 18–25
  history, 27–31
  U.S history, 33–47
  U.S. law, 49–55
  economics, 57–63
  eligibility, 65–78
  criteria, 80–87
  types of, 89–92
  application process, 94–100
  enforcement, 103–110
  litigation, 112–149
  appeals, 151–152
  mediation and arbitration, 154–157
Patent Act of 1930, 89
Patent Act of 1952, 74
Patent Act of 2011, 52
patent examiner, 84, 98–100, 140
patent monetization entities, 159
Patent Trial and Appeal Board, 55
patent trolls, 46, 47, 146, 159–162
patent-eligibility trilogy, 68, 70
Peabody v. Norfolk, 301
Pepsi, 264, 324
PepsiCo, Inc. v. Redmond, 323
peremptory challenges, 134
permanent injunction, 148, 328, 329
Petty, Tom, 207
plant patents, 89–92
post-grant review, 55, 102, 122
preliminary pretrial conference, 124, 126

pre-mediation brief, 154
Prince, Richard, 213
prior use bar, 271
Progressive, 271
protective order, 125, 126

Q

Quaker Oats Company, 324
Queen Anne, 28

R

Rader, Randall Ray, 161
Randolph, Edmund, 41
Recording Industry Association of America (RIAA), 208, 221
ReDigi, 92, 200
registration, 41, 166, 201, 202, 224, 252, 256, 259, 266–269, 272, 277–279
Reis, Elias E., 24
remedies, 147–149, 252, 303, 307, 320, 327
Research in Motion (RIM), 110
Rotary Club, 257
royalty, 102, 107, 108, 148, 182, 229–234, 329, 330
royalty injunction, 330
Rubin, Tom, 225

S

Samsung, 90, 110
scheduling order, 125
Scientific American, 24, 25, 39, 43, 62, 74
Schuyler v. Curtis, 188
Seagate Tech., LLC v. Western Digital Corp., 329
Sears, 273
Sega Enters., Ltd. v. MAPHIA, 286
service marks, 241, 256, 259, 266
Sforza, Gian Galeazzo, 171
Shell, 260
shuttle diplomacy, 155
Sillivan, Richard J., 200
similarity, 205, 206, 283–285
Singer Company, 44
Small Webcaster Settlement Act of 2002, 229
Smith, Adam, 45
Smith, Sam, 207
Society of European Stage Authors and Composers (SESAC), 220
Sonny Bono Copyright Term Extension Act, 223
Sony, 110
SoundExchange, 220, 232
Southern v. How, 248
spectrum of distinctiveness, 267, 268, 276
Spofford, Ainsworth, 181
standstill agreement, 155
Statute of Anne, 164, 173, 174
Statute of Monopolies, 28
statutory damages, 208, 295, 327
stay, 122
Story, Joseph, 49, 62, 177, 185, 190
Stowe, Harriet Beecher, 183
strict liability violation, 103
summary judgment, 53, 130, 131, 151
symbols, 192, 256, 261, 264, 267, 284

T

Taco Cabana, 263
Takahashi, Korekiyo, 58
Teleprompter v. CBS, 218
Thicke, Robin, 206
Thomas, Jammie, 208
Thomson, Elihu, 24
THX, 262
Tor Books, 227
trade dress, 263, 264
Trade Mark Act of 1881, 252
trademark, 241–244
  history, 246–249
  U.S. law, 251–253
  types of, 255–264
  distinctiveness, 266–269
  bars and criteria, 271–274
  protection, 276–281
  infringement, 283–287
  remedies, 289–290
  fair use, 292–293
trademark dilution, 286, 287
trade secret, 296–297
  advantages and disadvantages, 297–299
  law, 301–303
  criteria, 305–308
  protection, 310–316
  misappropriation, 318–325
  relief and damages, 329–330
Two Pesos, 263

U

U.S. Copyright Office, 166, 187, 202
U.S. Customs and Border Protection Service (CBP), 277
Uniform Law Commission, 302
Uniform Trade Secrets Act, 302
United Parcel Service, 256
United States Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO), 20, 24, 55, 60, 61, 70, 84–87, 94, 97, 100, 103, 105, 109, 118, 141, 142, 243, 261, 262, 267, 272, 277
United States Supreme Court, 55, 68, 77, 161, 200, 233, 251, 260, 298
utility, 18, 41, 74, 80–86, 89–91, 94, 100, 166
utility patents, 89–91, 100

V

venue, 102, 115–118, 120
vicarious infringement, 283, 286
Vickery v. Welch, 301

W

Walt Disney Company, 223, 281
Warren, Samuel, 188
Washington, George, 21, 35, 178
Webster, Daniel, 22
West, Kanye, 206
Whitney v. Emmett, 50, 167
Whitney, Eli, 177
willful infringement, 143, 144, 145
Williams, Pharrell, 206
Winthrop, John, 57

Wolowski, Louis, 36
work for hire, 164, 175, 198
working requirements, 29, 41, 42, 47
World Trade Organization (WTO), 89
Worshipful Company of Stationers, 173

X

Xerox, 267, 269

Z

Z-Burger, 277, 278